

Update Information 2010 Update Number 1

This package updates the *Subject Headings Manual*, 2008 edition, which was published in 2009. All new instruction sheets and replacement pages in 2010 Update Number 1 are dated February 2010. The table that follows lists the pages included in this package and summarizes the nature of the updates. Users who wish to maintain a permanent record of the history of the additions and changes listed here should file this table behind the **Update Information** tab in Volume 4 of the manual.

With this update, the manual is current through the end of February 2010. 2010 Update Number 2 is scheduled to be published in Autumn 2010.

Note: This update package cannot be used with the *Subject Cataloging Manual: Subject Headings*, 5th edition, originally published in 1996. That edition is closed, and is no longer being updated. These update sheets are compatible only with the 2008 edition of the *Subject Headings Manual*.

<i>Instruction Sheet</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>Addition/Change</i>	<i>Action</i>
Contents	1	H 165 added	Replace
Contents	5	Title of H 1300 changed	Replace
Contents	10	Appendix E added	Replace
H 40	1-2	"Subject Headings Editorial team" changed to "Data Integrity Section"	Replace
H 165	1-4	New instruction sheet	Add
H 182	3	Text revised in sec. 5	Replace
H 193	4-6	"Subject Headings Editorial team" changed to "Data Integrity Section"	Replace
H 193.5	1	"Subject Headings Editorial team" changed to "Data Integrity Section"	Replace
H 194	2	"Subject Headings Editorial team" changed to "Data Integrity Section"	Replace
H 195	2	"Subject Headings Editorial team" changed to "Data Integrity Section"	Replace

Update Information

2010 Update Number 1

<i>Instruction Sheet</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>Addition/Change</i>	<i>Action</i>
H 196	1	"Subject Headings Editorial team" changed to "Data Integrity Section"	Replace
H 200	1	"Subject Headings Editorial team" changed to "Data Integrity Section"	Replace
H 200	9-11	"Subject Headings Editorial team" changed to "Data Integrity Section"; references to H 165 added in sec. 12 and in Checklist on p. 11	Replace
H 200	18-20	"Subject Headings Editorial team" changed to "Data Integrity Section"	Replace
H 250	11	"Subject Headings Editorial team" changed to "Data Integrity Section"	Replace
H 306	1	Text revised in sec. 1	Replace
H 320	1	Text revised in sec. 2	Replace
H 370	4	Example updated in sec. 1.a.(2)	Replace
H 400	4	"Subject Headings Editorial team" changed to "Data Integrity Section"	Replace
H 405	3-15	Lists updated	Replace pp. 3-14; add p. 15
H 430	2	"Cataloging Policy and Support Office" changed to "Policy and Standards Division"	Replace
H 432	2	"Subject Headings Editorial team" changed to "Data Integrity Section"	Replace
H 460	1	Text added to Background statement	Replace
H 475	1	"Cataloging Policy and Support Office" changed to "Policy and Standards Division"	Replace

Update Information 2010 Update Number 1

<i>Instruction Sheet</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>Addition/Change</i>	<i>Action</i>
H 708	2	"Subject Headings Editorial team" changed to "Data Integrity Section"	Replace
H 715	1	"Cataloging Policy and Support Office" changed to "Policy and Standards Division"	Replace
H 835	4	"Subject Headings Editorial team" changed to "Data Integrity Section"	Replace
H 836	1	"Subject Headings Editorial team" changed to "Data Integrity Section"	Replace
H 1095	11-12	List updated	Replace
H 1095	41-42	List updated	Replace
H 1095	59	List updated	Replace
H 1100	7-8	List updated	Replace
H 1103	3-8	List updated	Replace
H 1105	5-6	List updated	Replace
H 1110	13-24	List updated	Replace
H 1120	1-2	List updated	Replace
H 1147	1-12	List updated	Replace
H 1153	3-4	List updated	Replace
H 1154	5-13	List updated	Replace pp. 5-12; add p. 13
H 1155.2	1-2	List updated	Replace
H 1155.8	1-2	List updated	Replace
H 1156	1-8	List updated	Replace
H 1159	7-8	List updated	Replace

Update Information

2010 Update Number 1

<i>Instruction Sheet</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>Addition/Change</i>	<i>Action</i>
H 1160	7-9	List updated	Replace
H 1161	1-2	List updated	Replace
H 1180	1-10	List updated	Replace
H 1187	3	List updated	Replace
H 1195	3-6	List updated	Replace
Contents of Volume Three	1-2	Title of H 1300 changed	Replace
H 1225	3	Text added to sec. 3	Replace
H 1250	7	Example updated in sec. 1.i.	Replace
H 1300	1-3	Title changed	Replace
H 1332	7	Typographical error corrected	Replace
H 1334	2	"Subject Headings Editorial team" changed to "Data Integrity Section"	Replace
H 1334	7-12	Sec. 4.a.(4) added	Replace
H 1361	3	Text revised in sec. 4.b.	Replace
H 1367	1-3	Examples updated in sec. 1.b. and sec. 3	Replace
H 1370	2-4	Examples updated in sec. 3.b., 4.d, and 5.a	Replace
H 1579	1-3	Text added to sec. 1.a.	Replace
H 1627	6	Examples updated in sec. 2.c.(4)	Replace
H 1680	1	Heading updated in Background statement; example updated in sec. 1	Replace
H 1718	1-3	Text updated in sec. 2.a.	Replace

Update Information 2010 Update Number 1

<i>Instruction Sheet</i>	<i>Page</i>	<i>Addition/Change</i>	<i>Action</i>
Contents of Volume Four	1-2	Appendix E added	Replace
H 1916	3	Example updated in sec. 6	Replace
H 1928	1-3	Text added to sec. 2	Replace pp. 1-2; add page 3
H 1929	1	Text revised in sec. 2	Replace
H 1942	3-5	Text updated in sec. 4.b.; examples updated	Replace
H 1998	4	Example updated in sec. 3	Replace
H 2032	3-4	Examples updated in sec. 3 and sec. 4	Replace
H 2217	2	Example updated in sec. 1.d.	Replace
Glossary	3	"Cataloging Policy and Support Office" changed to "Policy and Standards Division"	Replace
Appendix E	1-8	New instruction sheet	Add
Index	1-96	Text updated	Replace

Contents

VOLUME ONE

<i>H 40</i>	Library of Congress Subject Authority Records
<i>H 80</i>	Order of Subject Headings
<i>H 150</i>	Partial Title Added Entries
<i>H 160</i>	Uncontrolled Subject Terms in the 653 Field
<i>H 165</i>	Subject Heading Changes in Bibliographic Records
<i>H 170</i>	Core Level Records
<i>H 175</i>	Editions
<i>H 180</i>	Assigning and Constructing Subject Headings
<i>H 181</i>	Arabic/Persian Subject Headings
<i>H 182</i>	Chinese/Japanese/Korean Subject Headings
<i>H 184</i>	Subject Headings Identical to Descriptive Access Points

Making Subject Heading Proposals

<i>H 187</i>	When to Establish a New Topical Heading
<i>H 193</i>	Changing a Heading or Deleting a Subject Authority Record
<i>H 193.5</i>	Deleted Heading Information
<i>H 194</i>	Providing for Geographic Subdivision of Existing Subject Headings
<i>H 195</i>	Changing References in Subject Authority Records
<i>H 196</i>	Changing Class Numbers in Subject Authority Records
<i>H 200</i>	Preparation of Subject Heading Proposals
<i>H 202</i>	Authority Research for Subject Heading Proposals
<i>H 203</i>	Citation of Sources
<i>H 205</i>	Establishing New Subdivisions Having General Application

Contents

VOLUME ONE (Continued)

Formulating Subject Headings

- H 250* Music Heading Authority Records
- H 285* Singular vs. Plural Forms in Subject Headings
- H 290* Articles in the Initial Position
- H 306* Natural Language in Topical Subject Headings
- H 310* [. . .] and [. . .] Headings
- H 315* Foreign Terms
- H 320* Headings Qualified by Nationality, Ethnic Group, Language, etc.
- H 350* Nationality Designation of Classes of Persons
- H 351* Ethnic Qualifiers
- H 357* Parenthetical Qualifiers in Subject Headings
- H 360* [. . .] as [. . .] Headings
- H 362* Free-Floating Terms and Phrases

- H 364* Authorization for Geographic Subdivision

- H 365* Library of Congress Classification Numbers in Subject Authority Records

References

- H 370* Broader Terms, Narrower Terms, and Related Terms
- H 371* General See Also References
- H 373* "Used for" References
- H 374* General See References
- H 375* [*Topic*]—[*Place*] Broader Term References

- H 400* Scope Notes

- H 405* Establishing Certain Entities in the Name or Subject Authority File

Name Headings as Subjects

- H 430*
- H 432* Subject Usage Information in Name Authority Records
- H 436* Provisional Name Headings
- H 460* Name Changes in Non-Jurisdictional Corporate Bodies
- H 475* Subdividing Corporate Name Headings by Place

- H 620* Chronological Headings and Subdivisions

Contents

VOLUME TWO (Continued)

Subdivisions

Free-floating subdivisions

Subdivisions Controlled by Pattern Headings

<i>H 1180</i>	Plants and Crops
<i>H 1185</i>	Religions
	<i>Religious Bodies</i>
<i>H 1186</i>	Religious and Monastic Orders
<i>H 1187</i>	Christian Denominations
<i>H 1188</i>	Sacred Works
	<i>Vehicles</i>
<i>H 1195</i>	Land Vehicles
<i>H 1200</i>	Wars

VOLUME THREE

Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, etc.

<i>H 1205</i>	Abstracts
<i>H 1206.5</i>	Acronyms
<i>H 1210</i>	Addresses, Essays, Lectures
<i>H 1210.5</i>	Aerial and Space Photography
<i>H 1211</i>	Airports
<i>H 1223</i>	Arabs
<i>H 1225</i>	Archaeological Works
<i>H 1230</i>	Archives and Archival Resources
<i>H 1250</i>	Art and Fine Art
<i>H 1255</i>	Artistic Photography
<i>H 1265</i>	Awards
<i>H 1285</i>	Battles
<i>H 1295</i>	Bible: Special Topics
<i>H 1300</i>	Bible and Other Sacred Works
<i>H 1322</i>	Bibliographies about Individual Persons
<i>H 1325</i>	Bibliography of Bibliographies
<i>H 1328</i>	Bio-bibliography
<i>H 1330</i>	Biography

Contents

VOLUME THREE (Continued)

Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, etc.

<i>H 1332</i>	Biological Names
<i>H 1333</i>	Books and Reading
<i>H 1333.5</i>	Boundaries
<i>H 1334</i>	Buildings and Other Structures
<i>H 1334.5</i>	Buildings and Structures in Cities: Assignment of Headings
<i>H 1350</i>	Case Studies and Cases
<i>H 1360</i>	Catalogs
<i>H 1361</i>	Catalogs of Library Materials
<i>H 1365</i>	Cemeteries
<i>H 1366</i>	Census
<i>H 1367</i>	Chronology
<i>H 1370</i>	Civilization
<i>H 1412</i>	Classical and Ancient Works
<i>H 1425</i>	Collected Works and Collections
<i>H 1427</i>	Collections of Objects
<i>H 1430</i>	Comics and Comic Characters
<i>H 1435</i>	Commentaries on Individual Works
<i>H 1438</i>	Composers and Works about Music of Individual Composers
<i>H 1460</i>	Congresses
<i>H 1465</i>	Constitutions
<i>H 1468</i>	Contracts
<i>H 1472</i>	Controversial Literature
<i>H 1475</i>	Cooking and Cookbooks
<i>H 1480</i>	Correspondence of Individual Persons
<i>H 1510</i>	Cross-Cultural Studies
<i>H 1520</i>	Databases
<i>H 1530</i>	Description and Travel
<i>H 1532</i>	Design and Construction
<i>H 1538</i>	Diaries
<i>H 1540</i>	Dictionaries
<i>H 1550</i>	Digests
<i>H 1558</i>	Directories
<i>H 1560</i>	Disasters, Riots, Demonstrations, etc.
<i>H 1564</i>	Discovery and Exploration
<i>H 1570</i>	Dissertations and Theses

VOLUME FOUR (Continued)

Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, etc.

<i>H 1919.5</i>	Nationalities
<i>H 1920</i>	Newspapers on Special Topics and Ethnic Newspapers
<i>H 1925</i>	Parks, Reserves, National Monuments, etc.
<i>H 1927</i>	Periodicals
<i>H 1928</i>	Personal Narratives
<i>H 1929</i>	Philosophy
<i>H 1935</i>	Pictorial Works
<i>H 1942</i>	Politics and Government
<i>H 1943.5</i>	Popular Works
<i>H 1945</i>	Postage Stamps on Specific Topics
<i>H 1945.5</i>	Posters
<i>H 1949</i>	Professional Ethics
<i>H 1955</i>	Public Opinion
<i>H 1965</i>	Publishers' Catalogs
<i>H 1969</i>	Quotations and Maxims
<i>H 1969.5</i>	Radio Genre/Form Headings
<i>H 1970</i>	Railroads
<i>H 1975</i>	Readers
<i>H 1980</i>	Reference Books
<i>H 1995</i>	Regimental Histories
<i>H 1996</i>	Relations and Military Relations
<i>H 1997</i>	Religion
<i>H 1998</i>	Religious Aspects of Topics
<i>H 2015</i>	Religious Denominations or Religions as Subdivisions
<i>H 2015.5</i>	Religious Life
<i>H 2016</i>	Religious Life and Customs
<i>H 2020</i>	Research
<i>H 2021</i>	Reviews
<i>H 2032</i>	Sermons
<i>H 2040</i>	Simulation Methods in Special Fields
<i>H 2055</i>	Social Conditions
<i>H 2057</i>	Social Life and Customs
<i>H 2060</i>	Societies
<i>H 2070</i>	Software and Works about Software
<i>H 2075</i>	Songs and Music
<i>H 2080</i>	Sources

Contents

VOLUME FOUR (Continued)

Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, etc.

<i>H 2083</i>	Specifications
<i>H 2095</i>	Statistics
<i>H 2098</i>	Streets and Roads
<i>H 2100</i>	Strikes and Lockouts
<i>H 2110</i>	Study and Teaching
<i>H 2145</i>	Supplementary Works
<i>H 2149</i>	Surveys
<i>H 2160</i>	Tables
<i>H 2184</i>	Terms and Phrases
<i>H 2185</i>	Territories and Possessions
<i>H 2186</i>	Testing
<i>H 2187</i>	Textbooks
<i>H 2190</i>	Texts
<i>H 2217</i>	Training
<i>H 2219</i>	Translating
<i>H 2220</i>	Translations
<i>H 2225</i>	Transportation
<i>H 2227</i>	Treaties
<i>H 2228</i>	Trials
<i>H 2230</i>	Visual Materials and Non-Music Sound Recordings
<i>H 2232</i>	Vocational Guidance
<i>H 2400</i>	Yearbooks

Glossary

<i>Appendix A</i>	Abbreviations
<i>Appendix B</i>	Capitalization
<i>Appendix C</i>	Diacritics and Special Characters
<i>Appendix D</i>	Punctuation
<i>Appendix E</i>	Geographic Area Codes

Update Information

Index

Library of Congress Subject Authority Records H 40

BACKGROUND: *Online subject authority records in the LC Database take precedence over all printed products as authority for the non-free-floating elements of subject headings. Additionally, subdivision authority records have been created to control the more than 3,200 free-floating subdivisions. These records, used in conjunction with name authority records in the LC Database and the lists of free-floating subdivisions and other elements in the **Subject Headings Manual**, constitute final authority for the assignment of subject headings.*

A copy of each subject authority record in the LC Database also resides in another database called the LCSH Master Database. This database is used primarily for generating printed products, such as the annual editions of Library of Congress Subject Headings and the Subject Headings Weekly Lists. Catalogers do not normally need to use this database for searching or other cataloging activities. However, they may occasionally wish to check this database to determine the status of a subject heading proposal that is still in process.

1. Characteristics of subject authority records.

a. Records for approved headings. An existing heading that is approved and valid for use is represented in the LC Database by a single authority record with a record ID number in the 010 field having the prefix **sh**. No 019 field is present in the record. An identical copy of the record resides in the LCSH Master Database.

b. Records for newly proposed headings. A proposed heading is represented in the LC Database by a single authority record with a record ID number in the 010 field having the prefix **sh** and the identical ID number in the 019 field having the prefix **sp**. The label **[proposed]** appears after the heading in the 1XX field. The heading is not valid for use until it has been approved at a weekly editorial meeting. The authority record for a proposed heading is automatically copied to the LCSH Master Database on the day after it was last saved in the LC Database. Once the Data Integrity Section has assigned the proposal to a weekly list, the weekly list number can be found in the 906 \$t subfield in the copy of the record that is in the LCSH Master Database.

H 40 Library of Congress Subject Authority Records

1. Characteristics of subject authority records.

c. Records for headings being updated. An existing heading that is being changed in any way is represented in the LC Database by two authority records, one having a record ID number with the prefix **sh** in the 010 field, and the other having the same record ID number but with the prefix **sp**. This **sp** number appears in both an 010 and an 019 field in the **sp** record, and the label **[proposed update]** appears after the heading in the 1XX field. This label appears in the 1XX field regardless of whether the change being made is to that field or to another field or fields in the record. In order to determine the nature of the update being performed, it is necessary to compare the "sh" record with its "sp" counterpart. The "sp" record for a proposed change is automatically copied to the LCSH Master Database on the day after it was last saved in the LC Database. Once the Data Integrity Section has assigned the proposal to a weekly list, the weekly list number can be found in the 906 \$t subfield in the copy of the record that is in the LCSH Master Database.

2. Assigning valid headings as subjects. Before assigning a subject heading to a work being cataloged, ascertain that either (1) it is an AACR2 name heading represented by a name authority record in the LC Database (cf. H 430); or (2) it is represented in the LC Database by a single subject authority record that has an 010 field with an **sh** record number and no 019 field; or (3) if it is represented in the LC Database by two subject authority records one of which has 010 and 019 fields with **sp** record numbers, the change being made is to a field other than the 1XX field; or (4) it is authorized by free-floating provisions (cf. H 362 for free-floating terms and phrases, H 1090 for multiple subdivisions, and H 1095-H 1200 for free-floating subdivisions).

Do not assign headings that have both "sh" and "sp" records in the LC Database unless the proposed change is in a field other than the 1XX field, that is, unless the heading itself is unaffected by the change. If the 1XX field is being changed, the proposal has appeared on a weekly list, and the editorial meeting has already taken place (as shown by the weekly list number in the 906 \$t subfield in the copy of the record that is in the LCSH Master Database), consult the approved weekly list posted on the Cataloging and Acquisitions Web site (<http://www.loc.gov/aba/>) to determine whether the proposed change was approved. "sp" records in the LC Database are converted to "sh" records approximately 3-4 weeks after the editorial meeting.

Subject Heading Changes in Bibliographic Records H 165

BACKGROUND: *Subject headings in an existing bibliographic record may be changed or corrected when an error has been discovered in the record or when an established subject heading is being changed or a new subject heading is being established. This instruction sheet provides guidelines addressed to Library of Congress catalogers for determining what to correct and what not to correct, and procedures for correcting records online in the LC ILS or for reporting records that are candidates for correction to the Data Integrity Section in the Policy and Standards Division. It replaces D 240 and parts of D 243, instruction sheets that were formerly in the **Subject Cataloging Manual: General Cataloging Procedures**.*

LC practice:

1. What to correct.

a. Errors. Correct spelling, typographical, and content designation errors in subject headings, as well as obsolete, unauthorized, or inappropriate subject headings. Focus on correcting only genuine errors. Avoid second guessing another cataloger's judgment or updating records that were cataloged in another era with different cataloging practices, so long as the headings are in currently valid form and were appropriate at the time the item was originally cataloged.

Note: Errors in existing records may be corrected at any time, either online in the LC ILS or by reporting them to the Policy and Standards Division/Data Integrity Section, using the Database Maintenance Request Form at

<http://www.loc.gov/staff/aba/psd/dbiu-form.php>

An error that occurs in only one or a few bibliographic records is usually more efficiently corrected by the cataloger online at the time the error is discovered. An error that occurs in a large number of records is more efficiently corrected by reporting it to the Data Integrity Section.

b. Revising existing subject headings. When an existing subject heading is being revised, all bibliographic records that contain the old form of the heading must be updated to the new form.

Do not change these bibliographic records online in the LC ILS before the subject heading change proposal has been submitted to the Data Integrity Section for inclusion on a weekly list and been approved by the editorial meeting. Instead, report these records as candidates for correction when submitting the proposal, using one of the methods described in sec. 4, below. After the proposal has been approved, the changes are made by the Data Integrity Section.

H 165 Subject Heading Changes in Bibliographic Records

1. *What to correct.* (Continued)

c. Establishing new subject headings. When a new heading is being established, search the bibliographic database to locate existing bibliographic records for which the new heading is appropriate. In some cases, the existing subject heading or headings will be deleted and the new heading substituted. In other cases, the existing headings will be retained and the new heading added.

Do not change these bibliographic records online in the LC ILS before the new subject heading proposal has been submitted to the Data Integrity Section for inclusion on a weekly list and been approved by the editorial meeting. Instead, report these records as candidates for correction when submitting the proposal, using one of the methods described in sec. 4, below. After the proposal has been approved, the changes are made by the Data Integrity Section

d. MARC vs. PREMARC records. Do not discriminate between MARC and PREMARC records with respect to subject heading corrections. Correct errors and add newly proposed headings to bibliographic records regardless of whether they are MARC or PREMARC records. When updating a subject heading on a PREMARC record to a currently valid form, delete the legend [from old catalog] if it appears beside the heading.

e. Genre/form headings. Correct headings in 655 fields if they have been assigned by the Library of Congress, that is, those with **0** in the second indicator position. Do not change those with any value other than **0** in the second indicator position.

2. *What not to correct.*

a. Children's literature headings. Generally, do not make changes in children's literature headings. These headings are maintained by the children's literature catalogers and/or the Data Integrity Section of the Policy and Standards Division.

Note: Children's literature headings are identifiable by the presence of 1 in the second indicator position of the 6XX fields.

b. Non-LC headings. Do not change non-LC headings such as National Library of Medicine headings or French language headings assigned by Canadian libraries.

Note: Non-LC headings are identifiable by the presence of values in the range of 2-7 in the second indicator position of the 6XX fields.

Subject Heading Changes in Bibliographic Records H 165

3. Correcting records online in the LC ILS. To correct a record that has an error of the type described in sec. 1.a., above, proceed as follows:

- Check that the legend in the 906 \$g subfield begins with **y-**.

If it begins with **n-**, do not correct the record.

*Note: If the 906 \$g subfield has the legend **n-oclcserc**, the record is a serial record that may be corrected using OCLC software. The corrected record will be automatically imported into the LC ILS, usually on the day after the correction was made.*

- Check that the 040 field has subfield **\$d DLC** in the final position. If it does not, add it.
- If the record is still in the CIP stage, follow the standard procedure for applying the code **rix** or **rip** in the 906 \$b subfield, as described in DCM M3.3.2.2.2., *Notification of CIP pre-publication changes*.
- Correct the text of the 6XX field(s) as necessary.
- Save the corrected record and validate it.

4. Reporting candidate records for correction to the Data Integrity Section. If an error occurs in a large number of bibliographic records, or if records need to be corrected or updated in connection with a subject heading proposal that has not yet been approved, report the candidate records to the Data Integrity Section for correction rather than correcting them online yourself. Use one of the following methods to report the records, as appropriate:

- **Database Maintenance Request.** Use the Database Maintenance Request Form at

<http://www.loc.gov/staff/aba/psd/dbiu-form.php>

Do not use this method if the corrections are being made in connection with a subject heading proposal that is being submitted and has not yet been approved. Instead, use one of the alternative methods listed below.

H 165 Subject Heading Changes in Bibliographic Records

4. *Reporting candidate records for correction to the Data Integrity Section. (Continued)*

- ***Printouts of records.*** Make a printout of each individual record to be corrected and manually mark it up with the changes that are to be made. Indicate clearly if any of the existing headings are to be changed or deleted and any new heading(s) to be added. If the position of a new heading is significant (for example, if the new heading should be the first subject heading in the record), indicate this clearly. If a new heading is to be assigned with topical, geographic, chronological, or form subdivisions, show the complete string.

The above method is recommended only if the number of records to be changed is small.

- ***Lists of LCCNs.*** If an identical change is to be made to a group of records, submit a list of the LCCNs of those records, together with clearly written instructions describing the change to be made to each record in the list.

The above method is recommended if the number of records to be changed is relatively large and the list of LCCNs can be easily assembled.

- ***Printout of search.*** Submit a screen printout that shows the search that was done to retrieve the candidate records, together with clearly written instructions describing the change to be made to each record retrieved by the search. If the printout displays any individual records that should not be changed, cross them off.

The above method is recommended if the number of records to be changed is relatively large and the candidate records can easily be retrieved by doing a single search.

Chinese/Japanese/Korean Subject Headings H 182

2. *Exact correspondence to official pronunciation and LC romanization.*

Examples: (Continued)

```
600 10 $6 880-05 $a Sun, Yat-sen, $d 1866-1925. $t San min zhu yi.  
880 14 $6 880-05?$1 $a Sun, Yat-sen, $d 1866-1925. $t [NON-ROMAN  
DATA]
```

3. *Geographic subdivisions.* Do not supply *NON-ROMAN DATA* for geographic subdivisions (subfield \$z). *Examples:*

```
651 #0 $6 880-05 $a Buzen-shi (Japan) $x Antiquities.  
880 #4 $6 651-05/$1 $a [NON-ROMAN DATA] $x Antiquities.  
650 #0 $a Buddhist antiquities $z Japan $z Antiquities.  
  
651 #0 $6 880-06 $a Kyōngsang-namdo (Korea) $x Description and  
travel.  
880 #4 $6 651-06/$1 $a [NON-ROMAN DATA] (Korea) $x Description  
and travel.  
650 #0 $a Cities and towns $z Korea (South) $z Kyōngsang-namdo.
```

4. *Qualifiers.* Do not supply *NON-ROMAN DATA* for additions to names enclosed in parentheses, that is, qualifiers of descriptive name headings. *Examples:*

```
610 20 $6 880-05 $a Nyohōji (Buzen-shi, Japan)  
880 24 $6 610-05/$1 $a [NON-ROMAN DATA] (Buzen-shi, Japan)
```

5. *Choice of non-Roman form.* Choose the non-Roman form as found elsewhere in the work, or any source, as appropriate. Use the form of the Chinese character as found elsewhere in the record or in the work. If the form is not found, supply the traditional form of the Chinese character. For Chinese and Japanese personal names in the parallel non-Roman field, do not follow the surname with a comma or leave a space. For Korean personal names, leave a space after the surname. *Examples:*

```
610 20 $6 880-05 $a Chiba-ken Bunkazai Sentā.  
880 24 $6 610-05/$1 $a [NON-ROMAN DATA].  
  
651 #0 $6 880-05 $a T'ai-pei hsien (Taiwan) $x Description and  
travel.  
880 #4 $6 651-05/$1 $a [NON-ROMAN DATA] (Taiwan) $x Description and  
travel.
```

H 182 Chinese/Japanese/Korean Subject Headings

5. *Choice of non-Roman form.*

Examples: (Continued)

```
610 20 $6 880-05 $a Zhongguo gong chan dang.  
880 24 $6 610-05/$1 $a [NON-ROMAN DATA].
```

```
610 20 $6 880-05 $a Zhongguo gong chan dang $x History.  
880 24 $6 610-05/$1 $a [NON-ROMAN DATA] $x History.
```

6. *Content designation of parallel non-Roman fields.* Use the same numeric tag, subfield codes, and first indicator of the corresponding romanized parallel field. Assign **4** as the second indicator.

Changing a Heading or Deleting a Subject Authority Record H 193

7. Classification number. Review the 053 field(s), if any, present in the record. See H 365 for guidelines on LC classification numbers in subject authority records. If any 053 is incorrect, change or delete it as necessary. If a required 053 field is not present, add it to the record.

8. Authority research information. Use 670, 675, and 952 fields to provide source citations, LC patterns, etc., applicable to the *new* form of the heading, following the guidelines in H 203, *Citation of Sources*, and the procedures in H 200, sec. 9 and 13.

9. Other fields. Add or edit any other fields as necessary, such as 260, 360, 680, and 781 fields. Follow the procedures described in H 200, sec. 6, 10, and 11. For examples of content designation of 260 and 360 fields, see H 374, *General See References*, and H 371, *General See Also References*. For examples of 680 and 781 fields, see H 200, sec. 10 and 11.

10. Bibliographic file maintenance. Indicate the total number of bibliographic records that will need to be updated as a result of the proposed change by adding a 952 field formatted as in the following example:

952 ## \$a 75 bib. records to be changed

If this field is already present in the record, edit it to reflect the number of bibliographic records being submitted with the current proposal. Do not add a second field of this type.

11. Cataloger's code. In the 953 field, add a \$b subfield with the appropriate four-character cataloger's code, for example **ta85**. If a \$b subfield is already present in the 953 field, replace the cataloger's code that is present with your own code.

12. Saving the record. Save the revised record to the LC Database by clicking on the boat icon.

H 193 Changing a Heading or Deleting a Subject Authority Record

13. Changing the heading in 5XX fields in other records. Locate all authority records in which the heading being changed has been used as a broader or related term, that is, those headings that are printed as NTs or RTs in *Library of Congress Subject Headings* under the heading being changed.

Make a copy of each of these records, as described in sec. 1, above. In the copied record, change the data in the 5XX field from the old form of the heading to the new form, or delete the field if the reference is no longer valid under current guidelines (see H 370). Follow the procedures described in H 195, *Changing References in Subject Authority Records*.

Note: If other obvious errors are present in any of these records, such as incorrect class numbers, invalid 4XX or 5XX fields, etc., correct these errors at the same time, insofar as this can be done within a reasonable length of time and without doing extensive research. It is not required to determine whether all existing references conform to current policy so that they may be coded as "evaluated" (cf. H 370, Background).

14. Changing the heading where used as an example in other records. If the heading being changed has been used as an example in a 260 field (general see reference), 360 field (general see also reference), or 680 field (scope note) in another record, there is a 681 field in the record reading "Example under [. . .]" or "Note under [. . .]." If this field is present, make copies of those records as well, and revise the copied records as necessary.

15. Submitting the proposal. Make a printout of the revised authority record for the heading that is being changed as well as printouts of all related authority records that were revised in conjunction with the proposal. In order to facilitate processing of the proposal for the weekly list, circle the tags of all fields that have been changed or added, using red ink if possible. It is not necessary to explicitly indicate fields that have been deleted. Submit the printouts to the Data Integrity Section together with the work being cataloged, if any, and printouts of any bibliographic records that will need to be changed. Once these printouts have been submitted to the Data Integrity Section, make no further changes to the online authority records in the LC Database. If any further additions or changes are required, notify the Data Integrity Section by telephone, email, or inter-office mail.

Changing a Heading or Deleting a Subject Authority Record H 193

16. Deleting an authority record. Normally, a subject authority record may be deleted only if either: (a) the heading duplicates a name heading; (b) the heading is replaced by a heading already represented by another subject authority record; or (c) an existing heading is being split into two or more new headings. If any of these conditions is met, submit a proposal to delete the record, as follows:

a. Retrieving and copying the authority record in the LCILS. Retrieve the authority record that is to be deleted. Make a copy of the record by clicking **Record** in the menu bar and then clicking **Make a copy**. Note that **[New auth record (Copy)]** appears in the title bar of the copied record.

b. Priority 1 proposals. If the proposed deletion is being made for material that is handled on a priority 1 basis in the editorial process, such as CIPs, change the value in subfield \$v of the 906 field from **0** to **1**, unless **1** is already present. If the priority of the proposal is lower than 1, change the value in this subfield from **1** to **0**, unless **0** is already present.

c. Adjusting the 010 field (record ID number) and adding an 019 field . In the 010 field of the copied record, change the prefix of the record ID number from **sh** to **sp**. Add an 019 field with the identical record ID number. It is suggested that the data in the 019 field be added by copying and pasting the data from the 010 field in order to ensure that the two fields are identical. The record ID number in both the 010 and the 019 fields must have the prefix **sp**.

d. Adjusting the 1XX field. Add the legend **[proposed update]** at the end of the field. Leave one blank space between the heading and the legend **[proposed update]**.

e. Explanation of the cancellation. Add a 682 field to the record with an \$i subfield containing an appropriate note explaining why the record is being deleted. Select this note from the list provided in H 193.5. If the note includes a citation to a replacement heading, use an \$a subfield to cite the heading. *Example:*

```
682 ## $i This heading has been removed from the subject authority
        file because it is covered by the subject heading
        $a Congo (Democratic Republic)--Languages
        $i (sh 85149573).
```

H 193 Changing a Heading or Deleting a Subject Authority Record

16. *Deleting an authority record.* (Continued)

f. Cataloger's code. In the 953 field, add a \$b subfield with the appropriate four-character cataloger's code, for example **ta85**. If a \$b subfield is already present in the 953 field, replace the cataloger's code that is present with your own code.

g. Saving the record. Save the revised record to the LC Database by clicking on the boat icon.

h. Submitting the proposal. Make a printout of the revised authority record for the heading that is being deleted. In order to facilitate processing of the proposal for the weekly list, circle the tags of all fields that have been changed or added, using red ink if possible. It is not necessary to explicitly indicate fields that have been deleted. Submit the printout to the Data Integrity Section together with the work being cataloged, if any, and printouts of any bibliographic records that will need to be changed. Once these printouts have been submitted to the Data Integrity Section, make no further changes to the online authority record in the LC Database. If any further additions or changes are required, notify the Data Integrity Section by telephone, email, or inter-office mail. This restriction on making changes applies also to catalogers who encounter a proposal record in the LC Database that was created by another cataloger and is still in process.

Deleted Heading Information H 193.5

BACKGROUND: When a subject authority record is deleted under the guidelines given in H 193, sec. 16, a note explaining the reason for the deletion is provided for the benefit of subscribers to the subject authorities tape distribution service. This explanation is given in a 682 field that appears on the weekly list and is distributed with the deleted record. This instruction sheet provides the standard wording that is used in 682 fields.

1. Cancellation of Library of Congress subject headings. When submitting a proposal to delete a subject authority record for a Library of Congress subject heading, add a 682 field with the appropriate note selected from the list that follows. If none of these explanations is appropriate for the case in hand, compose an original note that provides a clear explanation of why the record is being deleted. The Data Integrity Section will edit the note as necessary to standardize the wording.

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the subject heading is covered by an identical name heading (n XXXXXXXX).

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the subject heading is covered by the name heading \$a _____ \$i (n XXXXXXXX).

682 ## ‡i This authority record has been deleted because the subject heading is covered by the name headings \$a _____ \$i (n XXXXXXXX) and \$a _____ \$i (n XXXXXXXX).

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the heading is covered by an identical subject heading (sh XXXXXXXX).

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the heading is covered by the subject heading \$a _____ ‡i (sh XXXXXXXX).

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the heading is covered by the subject headings \$a _____ \$i (sh XXXXXXXX) and \$a _____ \$i (sh XXXXXXXX).

H 193.5 Deleted Heading Information

1. Cancellation of Library of Congress subject headings. (Continued)

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the heading is replaced by headings of the type [topic]--[place] for which individual subject authority records are not made.

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the heading is replaced by the heading \$a [. . .]--[. . .], \$i a heading for which a subject authority record is not made because it uses a free-floating subdivision.

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the heading is replaced by headings of the type \$a [. . .]--[. . .] \$i for which individual subject authority records are not made.

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the subdivision \$a _____ \$i is no longer valid.

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the heading will be established as a name heading when needed.

682 ## \$i This authority record has been deleted because the heading is not a valid AACR2 heading.

2. Cancellation of AC subject headings. When submitting a proposal to delete a subject authority record for an AC (juvenile) subject heading, add one of the following 682 fields, as appropriate.

682 ## \$i This authority record for an Annotated Card Program subject heading has been deleted because the heading is covered by an identical Library of Congress subject heading (sh XXXXXXXX).

682 ## \$i This authority record for an Annotated Card Program subject heading has been deleted because the heading is covered by the Library of Congress subject heading \$a _____ \$i (sh XXXXXXXX).

Providing for Geographic Subdivision H 194 of Existing Subject Headings

BACKGROUND: A subject heading is authorized to be divided by place when its authority record has the value **i** in field 008/06. This causes the notation (**May Subd Geog**) to be printed beside the heading when it appears on a weekly list and when it is printed in **Library of Congress Subject Headings**. This instruction sheet describes the procedure to request that an existing subject heading be authorized for geographic subdivision. For the procedure to request that a corporate body name heading be divided by place, see H 475. For general instructions on authorization for geographic subdivision, see H 364.

1. Retrieving and copying the authority record in the LC ILS. In order to divide by place a subject heading that is not currently authorized for geographic subdivision, retrieve the authority record in the LC ILS. Make a copy of the record by clicking **Record** in the menu bar and then clicking **Make a copy**. Note that **[New auth record (Copy)]** appears in the title bar of the copied record.

2. Adjusting the 010 field (record ID number) and adding an 019 field . In the 010 field of the copied record, change the prefix of the record ID number from **sh** to **sp**. Add an 019 field with the identical record ID number. It is suggested that the data in the 019 field be added by copying and pasting the data from the 010 field in order to ensure that the two fields are identical. The record ID number in both the 010 and the 019 fields should have the prefix **sp**.

3. Adjusting the 1XX field. Add **[proposed update]** after the existing text in the 1XX field. Leave a blank space between the heading in the field and the label **[proposed update]**.

4. Changing the 008 field. Click on the 008 button to display the 008 input screen. Click on the down arrow at the box labeled **Direct/indirect geographic subdivision** (field 008/06) to display the menu of available options. Click on **i: Subdivided geographically-indirect** to select that option. Then click on **OK** to save the change.

H 194 Providing for Geographic Subdivision of Existing Subject Headings

5. Bibliographic file maintenance. Add a 952 field showing the number of bibliographic records that are being submitted to be changed if the proposal is approved. Format the field as in the following example:

952 ## \$a 5 bib. records to be changed

If no records are submitted, indicate **0 bib. records to be changed**.

If this field is already present in the record, edit it to reflect the number of bibliographic records being submitted with the current proposal. Do not add a second field of this type.

Note: Searching the LC Database to locate and print out existing bibliographic records in which the heading could be divided by place is an optional procedure. Proposals to divide a heading by place may be submitted with no accompanying bibliographic records.

6. Cataloger's code. In the 953 field, add a \$b subfield with the appropriate four-character cataloger's code, for example **ta85**. If a \$b subfield is already present in the 953 field, replace the cataloger's code that is present with your own code.

7. Saving the record. Save the revised record to the LC Database by clicking on the boat icon.

8. Submitting the proposal. Make a printout of the revised record. In order to facilitate processing of the proposal for the weekly list, circle the tag **008**, using red ink if possible. Submit the proposal to the Data Integrity Section together with the work being cataloged, if any, and printouts of any bibliographic records that have been retrieved to be changed as a result of the proposal. Once the proposal has been printed out and submitted to the Data Integrity Section, make no further changes to the online record. If any further additions or changes are required, notify the Data Integrity Section by telephone, email, or inter-office mail.

Changing References in Subject Authority Records H 195

BACKGROUND: *References in the Library of Congress subject headings system can be changed by adding, deleting, or altering 260, 360, 4XX, and 5XX fields in subject authority records. In order to add a UF reference from a term not used as a subject heading to its equivalent heading, a 4XX field is added to the authority record for the heading. In order to add a reference from one subject heading to a narrower heading, a 5XX field coded as a broader term is added to the record for the narrower heading. To link two headings as related terms, a 5XX field coded as a related term is added to the records for both headings. To make a general see reference or a general see also reference, a 260 or 360 field is added to the record. References are cancelled by deleting fields in the equivalent manner. This instruction sheet describes the procedures for proposing such changes using the LC ILS. For guidelines on making references, see H 370-H 375.*

1. Retrieving and copying the authority record in the LC ILS. In order to add or change references in a subject authority record, retrieve the record in the LC ILS. Make a copy of the record by clicking **Record** in the menu bar and then clicking **Make a copy**. Note that **[New auth record (Copy)]** appears in the title bar of the copied record.

2. Adjusting the 010 field (record ID number) and adding an 019 field . In the 010 field of the copied record, change the prefix of the record ID number from **sh** to **sp**. Add an 019 field with the identical record ID number. It is suggested that the data in the 019 field be added by copying and pasting the data from the 010 field in order to ensure that the two fields are identical. The record ID number in both the 010 and the 019 fields should have the prefix **sp**.

3. Adjusting the 1XX field. Add **[proposed update]** after the existing text in the 1XX field. Leave a blank space between the heading in the field and the label **[proposed update]**.

4. Adding or editing 4XX fields (UF references). Add, edit, or delete 4XX fields, as necessary, keeping all 4XX fields together in a single alphabetical list. For variant forms of names or alternate terminology added in 4XX fields, provide supporting authority in 670 fields according to the instructions in H 200, sec. 9.b.

5. Adding or editing 5XX fields (broader terms and related terms). Add, edit, or delete 5XX fields, as necessary. Identify a 5XX field as a broader term by means of a \$w control subfield with the value **g**. Identify a 5XX field as a related term by omitting the \$w control subfield. Keep all broader term 5XX fields together in a single alphabetical list and all related term 5XX fields in a separate alphabetical list following the broader terms.

H 195 Changing References in Subject Authority Records

5. *Adding or editing 5XX fields (broader terms and related terms).* (Continued)

Remember that in order to link two headings as related terms, the authority record for each heading must have a 5XX field containing the other heading, and that in each case this field must be identified as a related term by the absence of a \$w control subfield. Therefore to add, change, or delete a related term reference, it is necessary to copy and revise two authority records. Follow the procedures in this instruction sheet to change both records.

To change an existing reference from a related term to a broader term, add \$w g as the first subfield in the 5XX field and delete the reciprocal reference from the authority record for the other heading. To change an existing reference from a broader term to a related term, delete \$w g from the 5XX field and add a reciprocal reference to the authority record for the other heading.

After the 5XX fields have been revised, reposition them within the record if necessary so that all broader terms are placed together in a single alphabetical list, followed by all related terms, also in a single alphabetical list.

6. *Adding or editing 360 fields (general see also references) or editing 260 fields (general see references).* Add, edit, or delete 360 fields as necessary. Edit or delete 260 fields as necessary. For examples of content designation of these fields, see H 374, *General See References*, and H 371, *General See Also References*.

7. *Cataloger's code.* In the 953 field, add a \$b subfield with the appropriate four-character cataloger's code, for example **ta85**. If a \$b subfield is already present in the 953 field, replace the cataloger's code that is present with your own code.

8. *Saving the record.* Save the revised record to the LC Database by clicking on the boat icon.

9. *Submitting the proposal.* Make a printout of the revised record. In order to facilitate processing of the proposal for the weekly list, circle the tags of all fields that have been changed or added, using red ink if possible. It is not necessary to explicitly indicate fields that have been deleted. Submit the proposal to the Data Integrity Section. Once the proposal has been printed out and submitted to the Data Integrity Section, make no further changes to the online record. If any further additions or changes are required, notify the Data Integrity Section by telephone, email, or inter-office mail.

Changing Class Numbers in Subject Authority Records H 196

BACKGROUND: *LC classification numbers associated with subject headings appear in 053 fields in subject authority records. When there is more than one class number or span of numbers associated with a heading, the authority record has a separate 053 field for each. Class numbers are formulated and added to subject headings according to the principles described in H 365. When it is necessary to add a new 053 field or to make other changes in an existing record, existing 053 fields should be reviewed to determine that they are substantively correct, that is, that the numbers are still valid and appropriate for the heading and that the qualifying terms, if any, are correct.*

This instruction sheet describes the procedures followed by Library of Congress cataloging staff to add or change a class number in an existing authority record using the LC ILS. In most cases, proposals to add or revise 053 fields are processed “off-list,” that is, the Policy and Standards Division reviews and approves the proposal and the Data Integrity Section inputs the change into the LC Database and the LCSH Master Database without putting it on a weekly list for review by the editorial meeting. Therefore it is not necessary for catalogers to follow the normal procedures for changing the authority record online by copying it, revising it, and printing it out. Instead, the original authority record is simply printed out and annotated with instructions to add, change or delete 053 fields, as appropriate.

1. Preparing a printout. In order to add, change, or delete an 053 field in a subject authority record, make a printout of the record. Annotate the printout, using red ink if possible, by editing or crossing off existing 053 fields that need to be changed or deleted. Add new 053s by writing instructions in the blank area on the lower part of the printout, for example,

add: 053 QD380-QD388 (Chemistry)

add: 053 QP801.P64 (Biochemistry)

2. Submitting the proposal. Write your cataloger’s code and the date on the printout. Submit the proposal to the Data Integrity Section. After the proposal has been reviewed and approved in the Policy and Standards Division, the authority records in the LC Database and the LCSH Master Database will be updated by the Data Integrity Section to reflect the change.

*Note: If it is necessary to make any other change to the record in addition to the 053 change(s), follow the procedures appropriate for those other types of changes. For example, to add a broader term reference and change an 053 field in the same record, follow the procedures in H 195, **Changing References in Subject Authority Records**, rather than the procedures in this instruction sheet. Follow the procedures in this instruction sheet only when proposed changes are limited to the 053 field(s).*

Preparation of Subject Heading Proposals H 200

CONTENTS

BACKGROUND	2
GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SUBJECT HEADING PROPOSALS:	
1. Field 008	2-3
a. Geographic subdivision	2
b. Cataloging source	3
c. Other 008 information	3
2. Priority 1 proposals	3
3. Library of Congress Control Number	3
4. Classification numbers	3
5. Tags for headings and references	4
6. The heading	4
7. General references	5
8. Tracings and references	5-7
a. General rule	5
Reference patterns	5
b. 4XX's (UFs)	6
c. 5XX's (BTs and RTs)	6
d. Narrower terms (NTs)	7
9. Citation of sources	7-8
10. Scope note	8
11. Geographic subdivision information	8
12. Bibliographic file maintenance	9
13. LC pattern	9
14. Comments accompanying proposal	10
15. Cataloger's code	10
16. Material to be submitted to the Data Integrity Section	10
CHECKLIST FOR NEW SUBJECT HEADING PROPOSALS	11
HOW TO CREATE A SUBJECT AUTHORITY RECORD ONLINE IN THE LC ILS	12-19
APPENDIX I- ORDER OF FIELDS IN THE LC ILS	20
APPENDIX II - ORIGINAL VALUES IN FIELD 008	21

H 200 Preparation of Subject Heading Proposals

BACKGROUND: Headings that are in one of the following categories are authorized to be assigned as subject headings: (1) name headings established according to AACR2 rules (cf. H 430), (2) subject headings and subdivisions established for inclusion in the LCSH Master Database (cf. H 40), (3) subject headings constructed by using free-floating subdivisions under established name or subject headings (cf. H 1095), or (4) subject headings consisting of free-floating phrases appended to established name or subject headings (cf. H 362). Any other subject heading must be proposed by a cataloger and approved by the weekly editorial meeting for inclusion in the LCSH Master Database before its use as a subject heading is authorized. This instruction sheet explains the general requirements for new subject heading proposals and lists the steps to follow to create a subject authority record using the Library of Congress integrated library system (LC ILS). These procedures apply only to the creation of new authority records. For the procedures to follow in making changes to existing records, see H 193-196.

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SUBJECT HEADING AUTHORITY RECORDS

Note: These instructions are arranged in the order in which fixed and variable fields appear in the templates for creating new subject authority records in the LC ILS. The instructions provide tagging and subfield coding information for the most common situations that are encountered in creating subject authority records. In more complex situations it may be necessary to consult the MARC 21 authority format for detailed content designation information.

1. Field 008.

a. Geographic subdivision. The values that appear in the drop-down menu for the box labeled **Direct/indirect geographic subdivision (008/06)** are as follows:

-	=	Not subdivided geographically
i	=	Subdivided geographically - indirect
n	=	Not applicable [Used for reference records. See H 374.]
	=	No attempt to code [This value also indicates that the heading is not currently divided geographically]

See H 364 for guidelines on when to add codes to indicate that a heading may be subdivided geographically or not. Select **i** for a heading that is to be divided geographically. Select the hyphen (-) for a heading that belongs to a category that is not divided geographically. Under other circumstances, select the fill character (|) to indicate that no decision has been made at this time and therefore the heading is not divided geographically.

Preparation of Subject Heading Proposals H 200

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SUBJECT HEADING AUTHORITY RECORDS

12. Bibliographic file maintenance. Before submitting a completed proposal to the Data Integrity Section, search the LC Database to locate existing bibliographic records that should be updated as a result of the new proposal. Enter the total number of records to be changed in a 952 field formatted as in the following example:

```
952 ## $a 5 bib. record(s) to be changed
```

Note: The templates for creating new subject authority records in the LC ILS already contain this field, with the numeral 0. If records are being submitted to be changed, replace the 0 with the appropriate number. If no records are submitted for change, leave the field as is.

For detailed information about bibliographic file maintenance, see H 165.

13. LC pattern. When it is appropriate to cite an LC pattern (see H 202), enter it in a 952 field using the following terminology :

LC pattern: [heading being cited as pattern]

Example:

```
150 ## $a Poets, Zimbabwean  
952 ## $a LC pattern: Authors, Zimbabwean
```

This information is permanently retained in the authority record for the new heading in the LC ILS, but is not distributed outside the Library of Congress.

Note: The templates for creating new subject authority records in the LC ILS already contain this field. If a pattern is being cited, enter the appropriate heading. If a pattern is not being cited, delete the field.

Citing the Subject Cataloging Manual. If the heading and/or its reference structure is being established according to a pattern prescribed in a specific instruction sheet in the *Subject Cataloging Manual*, add a 952 field containing the number of the instruction sheet. Use the abbreviation **SCM**. *Example:*

```
952 ## $a SCM H 1334
```

H 200 Preparation of Subject Heading Proposals

GENERAL REQUIREMENTS FOR SUBJECT HEADING AUTHORITY RECORDS

14. *Comments accompanying proposal.* Enter any comments that are pertinent to the new heading, and that are intended to be a permanent part of the authority record, in a 952 field. These include information such as a definition of the heading or a description of its intended usage, a description of special problems or considerations that were factors in selecting the form of the heading or references, the impact that the new proposal might have on the assignment of other headings, or other relevant facts accumulated in doing authority research for the proposal. Communicate information that is only of transitory interest while the proposal is going through the editorial process by submitting a note together with the proposal.

15. *Cataloger's code.* Enter the appropriate four-character cataloger's code, for example **ta85**, in field 953, subfield \$a.

16. *Material to be submitted to the Data Integrity Section.* Submit the following material, as a single package, for each new heading proposed:

- the item generating the proposal, and its associated paper work
- a printout of the newly created authority record
- printouts of authority records for any headings that have been changed to add the newly proposed heading as a 5XX (BT or RT)
- printouts or listings of bibliographic records to be changed (see H 165 for procedures for preparing and marking printouts)
- notes, if any, addressed to the Data Integrity Section or to policy staff in the Policy and Standards Division.

17. *Changing a proposal record after it has been created and saved.* Catalogers may make online changes to a proposal record *only on the same day* on which the record was created. If it is necessary to make changes on a subsequent day (but before the proposal package has been submitted to the Data Integrity Section), do so by making a printout of the record, annotating the printout in red showing the changes to be made, and submitting the annotated printout to the Data Integrity Section together with the other material listed in sec. 16, above. If any additions or changes need to be made after the proposal has been submitted, notify the Data Integrity Section of the desired change(s) by telephone, email, or inter-office mail. This restriction on making changes applies also to catalogers who encounter a proposal record in the LC Database that was created by another cataloger and is still in process.

Preparation of Subject Heading Proposals H 200

CHECKLIST FOR NEW SUBJECT HEADING PROPOSALS

Before submitting a new subject heading proposal to the Data Integrity Section, check to see that the following procedures have all been properly followed:

GENERAL

- Proposal is necessary, i.e., does not use a free-floating subdivision or phrase (see H 362, H 1095-H 1200)
- Proposed heading does not duplicate an existing heading, or has not already been established in another form

SUBJECT AUTHORITY RECORD

- Class number(s) have been provided in 053 fields, where appropriate
- The appropriate value has been selected in the box labeled **Direct/indirect geographic subdivision** on the 008 input screen
- Cataloger's code appears in subfield \$a in 953 field
- Number of records to be changed is shown in 952 field (**0** if none)
- Proper source information has been provided in 670 field(s) and/or relevant LC pattern cited in 952 field
- Work generating the proposal, if any, has been cited in 670 field
- For priority 1 proposals, 906 subfield \$v has been changed from **0** to **1**

REFERENCES

- Required pattern references have been made
- Proposed 4XX's do not conflict with existing headings or references, and are listed in alphabetical order
- Proposed 5XX's are currently valid headings or proposed new headings. Broader terms are in one alphabetical list followed by related terms in a separate alphabetical list.
- For each 5XX that is a related term reference, there is an accompanying printout of the authority record for the existing heading revised to add a 5XX field with the new heading as related term
- Narrower term references have been made by following procedures in H 195 and submitting a printout of each authority record that has been changed to add the proposed heading as a 5XX(g)

RECORDS TO BE CHANGED

- Printouts of bibliographic records have been included with the proposal (see H 165 for detailed information about bibliographic file maintenance)

H 200 Preparation of Subject Heading Proposals

HOW TO CREATE A SUBJECT AUTHORITY RECORD ONLINE IN THE LC ILS

1. **Logging in.** Log in to the LC ILS cataloging module.
2. **Retrieving a template.** Click on the small down arrow next to the icon at the extreme left of the toolbar depicting a sheet of paper with one corner folded over. Then click on **Authority**. (Alternatively, click on **Record** in the menu bar, then on **New**, then on **Authority**.) Double click on **Subjects** to display the list of available templates. Double click on the name of the appropriate template for the type of heading being established. The template then appears on the screen. For example, double-click on **subject-topical.tem** and the template shown in Figure 1 appears.

The screenshot displays the Voyager Cataloging software interface. The title bar reads "Voyager Cataloging - [Auth Template: SUBJECT-TOPICAL.TEM]". The menu bar includes File, Edit, Record, Display, Options, Window, and Help. The toolbar contains various icons for file operations and editing. The main window is divided into sections. The top section is labeled "MARC" and contains fields for status, type, and enclosure (enc/1). Below this is a "Leader" field with values "n", "z", and "n". The "005" field is empty. The "008" field contains the value "970226 || _ a n a n n b a b n _ _ _ _ | a _ n n a _ _ _ _". The bottom section is a table with columns for Tag, I1, I2, and Subfield Data. The table contains the following rows:

Tag	I1	I2	Subfield Data
→ 906			#t ***** #u ***** #v 0
010			#a
019			#a
040			#a DLC #b eng #c DLC
053		0	#a
150			#a [proposed]
450			#a
550			#w g #a
670			#a Work cat.: 99
952			#a 0 bib record(s) to be changed
952			#a LC pattern:
953			#a

The bottom of the window shows a taskbar with the Start button and several open applications: WinPo..., ibm2..., TN32..., Group..., Corel..., Voyager, and Voya... The system clock in the bottom right corner shows 12:43 PM.

Figure 1 - Template for a topical subject heading

Preparation of Subject Heading Proposals H 200

HOW TO CREATE A SUBJECT AUTHORITY RECORD ONLINE IN THE LC ILS

12. 670 and 675 fields (Sources found and Sources not found).

[see also GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, sec. 9]

Enter the citation of the work being cataloged as the first 670 field in the record, using the blank 670 field provided in the template. The first four digits of the LCCN (those that represent the year) are already present in the field. Key the remaining six digits, using leading zeroes if necessary, so that the number appears in the format YYXXXXXX, for example, 99001234. Note that no hyphens are used in the LCCN. Key a colon immediately following the LCCN, then a blank space, then the citation of the work being cataloged (formatted according to the rules provided in H 203).

If additional source citations fields are being provided, list each in a separate 670 field.

If citations are being provided for “sources not found”, make only one 675 field, listing each source in a separate \$a subfield, as described in H 203, sec. 9.

13. 680 field (Scope note).

[see also GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, sec. 10]

Enter the text of a scope note in a 680 field using the content designation described in *GENERAL REQUIREMENTS*, sec. 10, above.

14. 781 field (Form in which heading is used as a geographic subdivision).

[see also GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, sec. 11]

For geographic headings, add a 781 field providing the form used when the heading is assigned as a geographic subdivision. Use the guidelines and content designation described in *GENERAL REQUIREMENTS*, sec. 11, above.

15. 952 fields (Local notes).

[see also GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, sec. 12, 13, and 14]

Two 952 fields are provided in the template, the first for the number of bibliographic records to be changed and the second for the citation of an LC pattern.

H 200 Preparation of Subject Heading Proposals

HOW TO CREATE A SUBJECT AUTHORITY RECORD ONLINE IN THE LC ILS

15. 952 fields (Local notes).

Replace the **0** that is already present in the field with the actual number of bibliographic records that are being submitted to be changed. If no records are being submitted, leave this 952 field with **0** as the number of records to be changed.

If an LC pattern is being cited, move the cursor after the colon in "LC pattern:". Key a blank space followed by the heading being cited as a pattern. Do not use subfield codes or delimiters to separate the parts of the heading being cited. Use double hyphens to indicate a heading-subdivision combination. If citing more than one heading as a pattern, separate the headings with a semicolon and a space. Follow the criteria in H 202 for citing LC patterns.

If no LC pattern is being cited, delete this field.

If additional 952 fields are needed, add them to the authority record.

16. 953 field (Cataloger's code).

Field 953 is provided in the template. Enter the appropriate four-character cataloger's code, for example **ld07**, in subfield \$a of this field.

17. Proofing, correcting, and saving the record. Proofread the data and make any needed corrections. Fields may be added or deleted following the standard LC ILS techniques that are used to edit bibliographic records. When satisfied that the record is correct and complete, save it to the LC Database by clicking the boat icon.

Once the record has been saved, it is still possible for the cataloger to edit it online, but only on the same day on which the record was created. Retrieve the record, make any additions or changes that are necessary, and re-save it by clicking the boat icon. If it is necessary to make changes on a subsequent day, do so by making a printout of the record, annotating the printout in red showing the changes to be made, and submitting the annotated printout to the Data Integrity Section, as described in sec. 18, below.

Preparation of Subject Heading Proposals H 200

HOW TO CREATE A SUBJECT AUTHORITY RECORD ONLINE IN THE LC ILS

18. Submitting the proposal.

*[see also GENERAL REQUIREMENTS, sec. 16 and
CHECKLIST FOR NEW SUBJECT HEADING PROPOSALS]*

After the proposal has received any necessary review on the cataloging team, make a printout of the proposal record and submit it together with the work being cataloged to the Data Integrity Section. If the proposal was not generated by a book or other item being cataloged, write **No book** on the printout before submitting it. Once the proposal has been printed out and submitted to the Data Integrity Section, make no further changes to the online record. If any further additions or changes are required, notify the Data Integrity Section by telephone, email, or inter-office mail. This restriction on making changes applies also to catalogers who encounter a proposal record in the LC Database that was created by another cataloger and is still in process.

H 200 Preparation of Subject Heading Proposals

APPENDIX I

ORDER OF FIELDS IN THE LC ILS

The following is the proper order of fields for subject authority records created using the LC ILS:

906
010
019
040
053 [repeatable]
969
1XX
260
360 [repeatable]
4XX [repeatable]
5XX [repeatable]
667 [repeatable]
670 [repeatable]
675
680 [repeatable]
681 [repeatable]
781
952 [repeatable]
953
979

Note: 969 and 979 fields are added to proposal records in the LCSH Master Database by members of the Data Integrity Section. For records undergoing a change, the type of change is indicated by a legend in a 969 field. The 979 field is a "forced filing field" that contains data allowing related headings to file adjacently on the tentative weekly list.

Music Heading Authority Records H 250

2. Pattern headings. (Continued)

e. Pattern: Free-floating subdivisions established under headings for individual musical instruments and families of instruments (cf. H 1161). For subdivisions that include a qualifier for type or style of music, the instrument must be established and the term in the qualifier for type or style of music must be established as a heading and in the subdivision list. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a Electric guitar
150 ## $a Alternative rock music
185 ## $v Methods (Alternative rock)
```

```
authorize 650 #0 $a Electric guitar $v Methods (Alternative
rock)
```

3. Geographic subdivision. Headings covered by this instruction sheet may be subdivided geographically. If the current authority record is not coded **i** in the 008/06 position, make a proposal to change it. See H 1160, sec. 3; H 1916.5 sec. 3; and H 1917 sec. 2.c. for guidance on when to assign geographic subdivisions to headings for musical works.

LC practice:

4. Forwarding material to the Data Integrity Section. When proposing new headings for musical works, forward the proposal, the item that prompts the proposal, and associated materials, to the Data Integrity Section, Policy and Standards Division, in accordance with H 200.

Exception: Generally, do not forward scores or sound recordings. If necessary, send a photocopy of information to support subject heading proposals.

Natural Language in Topical Subject Headings H 306

BACKGROUND: In the past many subject headings were established in inverted form, for example, **Chemistry, Analytic; Insurance, Health; Bridges, Concrete**. In 1983 a decision was made to create most new headings in direct form using natural language. The inverted form was retained for topical or form headings qualified by languages, nationalities, and ethnic groups. Since 1983 the number and types of headings established in inverted form have been gradually reduced. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for formulating new topical or form headings in direct or inverted form, but is not intended to prescribe every type of heading or situation.

1. Natural language headings. Except for those headings covered by sec. 2, establish new topical or form headings in straight form, using natural language, even if similar headings previously established are inverted. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Older women
[not 150 ## $a Women, Older]

150 ## $a Agricultural chemistry
[not 150 ## $a Chemistry, Agricultural]

150 ## $a Anonymous art
[not 150 ## $a Art, Anonymous]

150 ## $a Deaf bus drivers
[not 150 ## $a Bus drivers, Deaf]
```

Apply the above rule also to headings qualified by adjectives indicating religion (including the adjectives **Jewish** and Islamic), Christian denomination, or monastic or religious order. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Catholic hospitals
150 ## $a Hindu cave temples
150 ## $a Jewish day schools
150 ## $a Benedictine art
150 ## $a Coptic embroidery
150 ## $a Islamic jewelry
```

H 306 Natural Language in Topical Subject Headings

2. *Inverted headings.*

a. Language, nationality, or ethnic group qualifiers. Establish topical or form headings qualified by languages, nationalities, or ethnic groups in inverted form. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Art, French
150 ## $a Cookery, Chinese
150 ## $a National characteristics, Argentine
150 ## $a Poets, Kannada
150 ## $a Revolutionary poetry, Bulgarian
150 ## $a Songs, Greek (Modern)
```

Exceptions:

(1) Language and literature headings. The following language, literary, and related headings are established in normal word order. Literary forms not on this list are established in inverted order.

```
150 ## $a [...] diaries
150 ## $a [...] drama
150 ## $a [...] drama (Comedy)
150 ## $a [...] drama (Tragedy)
150 ## $a [...] drama (Tragicomedy)
150 ## $a [...] essays
150 ## $a [...] farces
150 ## $a [...] fiction
150 ## $a [...] imprints
150 ## $a [...] language
150 ## $a [...] letters
150 ## $a [...] literature
150 ## $a [...] newspapers
150 ## $a [...] periodicals
150 ## $a [...] philology
150 ## $a [...] poetry
150 ## $a [...] prose literature
150 ## $a [...] wit and humor
150 ## $a [...] wit and humor, Pictorial
```

Headings Qualified by Nationality, H 320 Ethnic Group, Language, etc.

1. General provision. Establish editorially each instance of a subject heading with an adjectival qualifier for nationality, ethnic group, language, etc. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Investments, American
150 ## $a Art, American
150 ## $a Mythology, Armenian
150 ## $a Short stories, English
150 ## $a Mexican American children
```

Exception: In the case of inverted subdivisions with adjectival qualifiers, individual adjectives may be applied without establishing each usage once a multiple subdivision has been provided in the subject authority file or on a free-floating list. For instructions on multiple subdivisions, see H 1090. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a World War, 1939-1945 $v Personal narratives,
      American.
651 #0 $a United States $x Foreign public opinion, British.
```

If the subdivision is uninverted and no multiple has been provided, establish each instance as needed. *Example:*

```
151 ## $a France $x Civilization $x American influences.
```

2. Inverted or uninverted headings. Establish all qualified headings in the inverted form except for those qualified by ethnic groups of the United States or by Indian groups, major literary forms (see H 306, sec. 2.a.(1); H 351), and a few other well-established patterns.

*Note: Headings qualified by adjectives for religious groups, including the adjectives **Jewish** and **Islamic**, are established in uninverted form (cf. H 306, sec. 1).*

Examples:

```
150 ## $a English poetry
150 ## $a African American children
150 ## $a French students
150 ## $a Indian women
150 ## $a American property
150 ## $a German imprints
```

H 320 Headings Qualified by Nationality, Ethnic Group, Language, etc.

3. References. Add as a standard reference to a qualified heading of this type a 450 field with the alternative form of the heading. If the heading is inverted, make the reference from the straight form; if straight, make the reference from the inverted form. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Art, French
450 ## $a French art

150 ## $a Mexican American art
450 ## $a Art, Mexican American
```

Do not add references from non-used variant forms of national and ethnic adjectival qualifiers. Instead make general see references from non-used adjectival variants according to the procedures in H 374.

Add additional 4XX or 5XX fields as appropriate. *Example:*

```
150 ## $a College and school drama, French
450 ## $a French college and school drama
550 ## $w g $a French drama
```

4. References for subdivisions used under qualified headings. When a subdivision established under the unqualified form of a heading has been provided with a complete reference structure, that reference structure should not normally be duplicated if the same subdivision is established under the qualified heading. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Corporations $x Investor relations
      [unqualified heading with subdivision]
450 ## $a Investor relations (Corporations)
550 ## $w g $a Public relations $x Corporations
550 ## $w g $a Stockholders

150 ## $a Corporations, American $x Investor relations
      [qualified heading with subdivision; no additional references needed]
```


Broader Terms, Narrower Terms, and Related Terms H 370

1. *Hierarchical references.*

a. General rule. When establishing a new heading, follow the principle described above in creating its reference structure, making appropriate BT reference(s) when establishing a new heading. Also follow the guidelines for making references for particular types of headings that are given in specific instruction sheets on those topics, for example, H 690, sec. 10.b and 10.c, for geographic names; H 1332, sec. 4.b., for biological names. The automated system generates the "reciprocal" NT references using the notation NT in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*. *Examples:*

Hot dog rolls	← <i>narrower heading</i>
BT Bread	← <i>broader heading</i>
 Bread	← <i>narrower heading</i>
BT Baked products	← <i>broader heading</i>

Except in the situations described below, make at least one BT when establishing a new heading. Make this BT even if both headings begin with the same word. *Example:*

Roads, Gravel
BT Roads

(1) "Orphan" headings. "Orphan" headings, that is, headings having no BT, are generally prohibited in the subject authority file. There are, however, a limited number of situations in which "orphan" headings are permitted, including the following:

- Headings that are "top terms," that is, the broadest topic in a given hierarchy, for example, **Science**.
- Headings for geographic regions.
- Headings for family names.

H 370 Broader Terms, Narrower Terms, and Related Terms

1. *Hierarchical references.*

a. *General rule.*

(1) *"Orphan" headings. (Continued)*

- Inverted headings qualified by names of languages, nationalities, ethnic groups, or terms that designate time periods, when the only appropriate BTs are the identical heading without the qualifier, the identical heading with a broader linguistic, national, or ethnic qualifier, or a broader heading with the identical qualifier. For example, **Painting, French** does not have the BT **Painting**; **Painting, European**; or **Art, French**; and **Aesthetics, Ancient** does not have the BT **Aesthetics**.

Note however that references are routinely made, especially for belles lettres headings of this type, from broader terms with the qualifier in the initial position, for example, **Short stories, German** has the BT **German fiction**.

(2) *"Subdivision-to-subdivision" references.* In general, do not make a reference from one heading with a subdivision to a narrower heading with the same subdivision. Instead, make the reference link at the level of the unsubdivided headings. *Example:*

Lamas
BT Buddhist priests

[not Lamas–Lineage
BT Buddhist priests–Lineage]

(3) *General see also references.* Do not make references between individual headings in situations where a general see also reference is appropriate and has been, or should be, made (see H 371).

1. *Types of scope notes used in the subject authority file.*

- ***Two or more closely related or overlapping headings.*** (Continued)

When one heading is defined or described with reference to one or more other headings, reciprocal notes are provided under all other headings to which the original note refers. The wording of the reciprocal note should be a "mirror image" of that of the original note, and the two notes should be composed using the following format:

Here are entered works on [*description of heading A*]. Works on [*description of heading B*] are entered under [*heading B*].

The second sentence of these notes should not be in the form "For works on [*description of heading B*], see [*heading B*]."

- ***Special instructions, explanation, referrals, etc.*** This type of note, rather than defining the scope of the heading, provides information such as instructions to catalogers for making additional subject entries, notices to catalog users, or generalized references. *Examples:*

Economic forecasting

When this heading is subdivided by place, a second subject heading is assigned for the name of the place with subdivisions such as Economic conditions, Economic policy, etc., e.g. 1. Economic forecasting—United States. 2. United States—Economic policy—2001-

School prose

For works limited to one school, the heading is qualified by nationality and subdivided by place, and an additional subject entry is made under the name of the school.

H 400 Scope Notes

2. *Proposing a scope note for a new heading being established.* Key the text of the scope note in a **680** field in the subject heading proposal record (see H 200, sec. 10).

3. *Adding a scope note to an existing heading or changing an existing scope note.*

a. *Retrieving and copying the authority record in the LC ILS.* In order to add or change a scope note in a subject authority record, retrieve the record in the LC ILS. Make a copy of the record by clicking **Record** in the menu bar and then clicking **Make a copy**. Note that **[New auth record (Copy)]** appears in the title bar of the copied record.

b. *Adjusting the 010 field (record ID number) and adding an 019 field .* In the 010 field of the copied record, change the prefix of the record ID number from **sh** to **sp**. Add an 019 field with the identical record ID number. It is suggested that the data in the 019 field be added by copying and pasting the data from the 010 field in order to ensure that the two fields are identical. The record ID number in both the 010 and the 019 fields should have the prefix **sp**.

c. *Adjusting the 1XX field.* Add **[proposed update]** after the existing text in the 1XX field. Leave a blank space between the heading in the field and the label **[proposed update]**.

d. *Adding or editing the 680 field.* Add a new 680 field following the procedures for content designation provided in H 200, sec. 10, or edit the existing 680 field as necessary.

e. *Cataloger's code.* In the 953 field, add a \$b subfield with the appropriate four-character cataloger's code, for example **ta85**. If a \$b subfield is already present in the 953 field, replace the cataloger's code that is present with your own code.

f. *Saving the record.* Save the revised record to the LC Database by clicking on the boat icon.

g. *Submitting the proposal.* Make a printout of the revised record. In order to facilitate processing of the proposal for the weekly list, circle the tags of all fields that have been changed or added, using red ink if possible. It is not necessary to explicitly indicate fields that have been deleted. Submit the proposal to the Data Integrity Section. Once the proposal has been printed out and submitted to the Data Integrity Section, make no further changes to the online record. If any further additions or changes are required, notify the Data Integrity Section by telephone, email, or inter-office mail.

Establishing Certain Entities in the H 405 Name or Subject Authority File

BACKGROUND: (Continued)

Lists of the categories of headings falling into both these groups are on pp. 5-13. This instruction sheet describes the procedures to be followed when it is necessary for a subject cataloger to establish a heading in one of these categories, or to request a descriptive cataloger to establish a heading for subject usage.

1. General rule. Whenever a new heading is needed for a named entity, consult the two lists on pp. 5-13 to determine whether the heading is categorized as a Group 1 or Group 2 heading. Follow the procedures appropriate to the group. If neither the precise category, nor a broader category that encompasses the precise category, nor a very closely analogous category is found in either of the two groups, bring the matter to the attention of the Policy and Standards Division (PSD) for an interpretation and possible addition of the category to one of the lists.

2. Group one headings. First search to determine whether the required heading has already been established as an AACR2 name heading. If so, use the heading as established. If not, establish it as a name heading or request a descriptive cataloger to do so.

If a heading in this category has been established as a *subject* heading, submit a proposal to delete the subject authority record according to the procedures in H 193 after it has been established it as a name heading.

3. Group two headings.

a. Heading required for subject cataloging purposes. First search to determine whether the entity has already been established as a name heading according to former guidelines. After making this determination, proceed as follows:

(1) Name authority record not found. Submit a proposal to establish the entity as a subject heading, following the standard procedures described in H 200, as well as any special procedures described in individual instruction sheets appropriate to particular categories of named entities, for example, H 1334 for buildings and structures, H 1925 for parks, etc.

Proposals of this type appear in the main alphabetical section of the weekly list and are treated as subject headings.

H 405 Establishing Certain Entities in the Name or Subject Authority File

3. Group two headings.

a. Heading required for subject cataloging purposes. (Continued)

(2) *AACR2 name authority record found.* If the record does *not* have a 667 field with the notation **Subj Cat Manual/AACR2**, consult the Policy and Standards Division to determine whether it should be canceled as a name heading and re-established as a subject heading.

(3) *Pre-AACR2 name authority record found.* Submit a proposal to establish it as a subject heading, as described in sec. 1.a., above. Notify the Policy and Standards Division of the invalid name heading so that the name authority record can be deleted.

b. Heading needed for use as descriptive access point. Follow the guidelines in the *Descriptive Cataloging Manual*, Z1, Appendix 1: Ambiguous Entities, sec. 1.2.(e) and sec. 3.1.

Establishing Certain Entities in the H 405 Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP ONE - NAME AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS: Named entities always established according to descriptive cataloging conventions with authority records that always reside in the name authority file.

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
Abbeys	110
Academies	110
Airplanes, Named	110
Airports	110
Almshouses	110
Aquariums, Public	110
Arboretums	110
Armories	110
Arsenals	110
Art works, Individual	100, 110, 130
Artificial satellites	110
Asylums (Charitable institutions)	110
Athletic contests	111
Banks	110
Bars	110
Biblical characters	100
Biological stations	110
Boards of trade (Chambers of commerce)	110
Botanical gardens	110
Broadcasting stations	110
Business parks	110
Cathedrals	110
Cemeteries ¹	110
Chambers of commerce	110
Chapels	110
Churches (in use or ruins)	110
Circuses	110

¹Headings in this category are for named cemeteries as corporate bodies. Headings for cemeteries that are archaeological sites include the term **Site** in the heading and are Group 2, established as subject headings, tagged 151, and qualified according to subject cataloging conventions.

H 405 Establishing Certain Entities in the Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP ONE - NAME AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
City sections ²	151
Collective settlements	151
Colleges	110
Comarcas	151
Comic strips	130 ³
Communes	151
Competitions	111
Computer programs and software	130 ²
Concentration camps	110
Concert halls	110
Conservation districts	151
Contests	111
Convents	110
Correctional institutions	110
Country clubs	110
Crematories	110
Dance halls	110
Denominations, Religious (Individual)	110
Dispensaries	110
Ecclesiastical entities that are also names of places, for example, Catholic Church. Diocese of Basel (Switzerland); Constantinople (Ecumenical patriarchate)	110
Ecological stations	110
Educational institutions	110
Electronic discussion groups	130
Embassies	110

²This category includes historic districts and special economic zones in cities.

³Although headings in this category are generally established under title and tagged 130, those that are established under personal or corporate names are tagged 100 or 110.

Establishing Certain Entities in the H 405 Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP ONE - NAME AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
Events ⁴	111
Exhibitions	111
Expeditions, Military	111
Expeditions, Scientific	111
Experiment stations	110
Expositions	111
Factories	110
Fairs	111
Festivals and celebrations	111
Fish hatcheries	110
Folk festivals and celebrations	111
Forest districts	151
Forests (Administrative agencies) ⁵	110
Funds	110
Funeral homes, mortuaries	110
Galleries	110
Games (Events)	111
Gangs	110
Halfway houses	110
Helplines, hotlines	110
Herbariums	110
Hospitals	110
Hotels	110
Housing projects	110
Individual works of art	100, 110, 130
Jurisdictions, Ancient (other than cities)	151
Laboratories	110
Libraries	110

⁴Events that are formally convened, directed toward a common goal, capable of being reconvened, and that have a formal name. See H 1592 for a list of types of events to be established in the name authority file.

⁵Headings in this category are always qualified by the term (**Agency**). Headings for forests as geographic entities are in Group 2, established as subject headings, tagged 151, and qualified according to subject cataloging conventions.

H 405 Establishing Certain Entities in the Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP ONE - NAME AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
Library districts	110
Markets	110
Military installations (active; also all after 1899)	151
Mining districts	151
Monasteries	110
Morgues	110
Mosques	110
Motels	110
Motion pictures	130
Museums	110
Night clubs	110
Nursing homes	110
Observatories	110
Old age homes	110
Opera companies	110
Orphanages	110
Parades	111
Park districts	151
Parks (Administrative agencies) ⁶	110
Planetariums	110
Planned communities	151
Plans (Programs)	110
Poorhouses	110
Port authorities	110
Prisons	110
Projects, plans, etc.	110
Public celebrations, pageants, anniversaries	111
Publishers' imprints	110
Pueblos	151
Races (Contests)	111

⁶Headings in this category are always qualified by the term (**Agency**). Headings for parks as geographic entities are in Group 2, established as subject headings, tagged 151, and qualified according to subject cataloging conventions.

Establishing Certain Entities in the H 405 Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP ONE - NAME AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
Radio programs	130
Railroads	110
Recreation districts	151
Refugee camps	110
Religious denominations	110
Research stations	110
Reserves (Administrative agencies) ⁵	110
Restaurants	110
Sanatoriums	110
Sanitation districts	151
Satellites, Artificial	110
School districts	110
Schools	110
Service stations	110
Ships	110
Shipyards	110
Shopping centers	110
Shows (Exhibitions)	111
Software, Computer	130 ⁷
Sound recording labels	110
Space vehicles	110
Sporting events	111
Stock exchanges	110
Stores, Retail	110
Studies (Research projects)	110
Synagogues	110
Television programs	130
Temples (in use; excludes temples in ruins)	110
Theater companies	110
Tournaments	111
Tribes (as legal entities only; U.S. only)	151

⁷Although headings in this category are generally established under title and tagged 130, those that are established under personal or corporate names are tagged 100 or 110.

H 405 Establishing Certain Entities in the Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP ONE - NAME AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
Truck stops	110
Undertakers	110
Universities	110
Utility districts	151
Water districts	151
Web sites	130
Works of art, Individual	100, 110, 130
Zoological gardens	110

Establishing Certain Entities in the H 405 Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP TWO - SUBJECT AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS: Named entities always established according to subject cataloging conventions with authority records that reside in either the name authority file or the subject authority file.

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
Amusement parks	151
Apartment houses	110
Aqueducts	151
Arches	150
Arenas	110
Artists' groups ⁸	150
Asian conglomerate corporations	110
Astronomical features (asteroids, comets, galaxies, planets, etc.)	151
Auditoriums	110
Awards	150
Bathhouses	110
Baths, Ancient	110
Bridges	151
Building details	150
Buildings, Private	110
Buildings occupied by corporate bodies ⁹	110
Bus terminals	110
Camps	151
Canals	151
Capitols	110
Castles	110
Celestial bodies	151

⁸Headings in this category include artists' groups that are often informally organized, may not be self-named, and do not play a role in collectively promoting and marketing their work. Headings for artists' groups that are self-identified by a particular name and function as a business firm in creating, publishing, promoting, and marketing their works are established as corporate entities according to descriptive cataloging conventions.

⁹This category consists of buildings known by different names from the corporate bodies that occupy them. For buildings that are known by the same name as the bodies that occupy them, see H 1334, *Background* statement.

H 405 Establishing Certain Entities in the Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP TWO - SUBJECT AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
Cemetery sites, Archaeological ¹⁰	151
Cities, Extinct (Pre-1500)	151
City halls	110
Civic centers	110
Clans	100
Club houses	110
Coliseums	110
Collections, Public or Private	110
Collective farms	151
Community centers	110
Computer languages	150
Computer networks	150
Computer systems	150
Convention centers	110
Courthouses	110
Customhouses	110
Details, Building	150
Docks	151
Doors	150
Dwellings	110
Estates	151
Events ¹¹	150
Exhibition buildings	110
Fairgrounds	151
Families	100
Farms	151
Feasts	150
Ferry buildings	110

¹⁰Headings in this category include the term **Site** in the heading and are qualified according to subject cataloging conventions. Headings for named cemeteries as corporate bodies are in Group 1, established as name headings, tagged 110.

¹¹Events that generally cannot be repeated and have no formal name but are commonly referred to by generic terms only. See H 1592 for a list of types of events to be established in the subject authority file.

Establishing Certain Entities in the H 405 Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP TWO - SUBJECT AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
Fire stations	110
Forests (Geographic entities) ¹²	151
Fortresses (Structures)	151
Fountains	150
Gardens	151
Gates	150
Golf courses	151
Grain elevators	110
Gymnasiums	110
Hazardous waste sites	151
Highways	151
Historic sites	
(including historic districts not in cities)	151
Immigration stations	110
Islands, Nonjurisdictional	151
Land grants	151
Lighthouses	110
Locks (Hydraulic engineering)	151
Locomotives	150
Manors	110
Mansions	110
Market buildings	110
Military installations	151
(inactive pre-1900 installations)	
Mine buildings	110
Mines	151
Mints	110
Monuments (Structures, statues, etc.)	150
Music halls	110
Office buildings	110
Official residences	110

¹²Headings in this category are qualified according to subject cataloging conventions. Headings for forests as corporate bodies are in Group 1, established as name headings, tagged 110, and qualified by the term (**Agency**).

H 405 Establishing Certain Entities in the Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP TWO - SUBJECT AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
Opera houses	110
Palaces	110
Parks (Geographic entities) ¹³	151
Pavilions	110
Pipelines	151
Playgrounds	151
Plazas (Open spaces, squares, etc.)	151
Police stations	110
Pools, Public	110
Ports (Physical facilities)	151
Post offices	110
Posthouses	110
Power plants	110
Presidential mansions	110
Public comfort stations	110
Racetracks	110
Railway stations	110
Ranches	151
Recreation areas	151
Remote-controlled vehicles	150
Reservations, Indian	151
Reserves (Parks, forests, etc.)	151
Resorts	110
Roads	151
Rooms	150
Sanitary landfills	151
Satellites (i.e., moons)	151
Schools of artists	150
Shrines (<i>not</i> churches)	150
Spas	110
Sports arenas	110

¹³Headings in this category are qualified according to subject cataloging conventions. Headings for parks as corporate bodies are in Group 1, established as name headings, tagged 110, and qualified by the term (**Agency**).

Establishing Certain Entities in the H 405 Name or Subject Authority File

GROUP TWO - SUBJECT AUTHORITY GROUP HEADINGS

<i>Category</i>	<i>MARC tag</i>
Sports facilities	110
Stadiums	110
Stagecoach stations	110
Streets	151
Structures (Non-geographic, for example, towers)	150
Temples (In ruins)	110
Terminal buildings	110
Theater buildings	110
Theme parks	151
Tombs	150
Towers	150
Trails	151
Tribes (Ethnic groups)	150
Tunnels	151
Villas	110
Walls	150
Waterways	151
Wells	151

Name Headings as Subjects H 430

BACKGROUND: *Most AACR2 name headings are usable not only as main or added entries, but also as subject headings. There are some situations, however, where a valid name heading may not be assigned as a subject heading because there are overriding subject cataloging policies. Catalogers are responsible for being aware of, and being able to identify, those situations where a name heading is inappropriate for subject use. They are also responsible, in situations where a name heading is appropriate and required for use as a subject heading or subdivision, for determining that it is a currently valid AACR2 heading. Information regarding the current status of a name heading is available in the name authority record for that heading. This instruction sheet describes the techniques for determining whether a required name heading is authorized for use in AACR2 cataloging, and illustrates how to interpret the data found in displays of name authority records.*

1. Name headings used by descriptive catalogers. If a required name heading appears in the bibliographic record for a work being cataloged, either as the main entry or as an added entry, it may be assumed that it is a valid AACR2 heading. Use such headings as subject headings without further searching.

2. Searching name headings in the LC Database. If a name heading is required for use as a subject heading and does not appear in the bibliographic record or has not been provided by the descriptive cataloger, search the LC Database to determine whether it has been established and whether it is currently valid. If the required name heading is not found, establish it or request a descriptive cataloger to do so.

3. Determining whether a heading found in the LC Database may be assigned as a subject heading. In order to determine whether a heading found in the LC Database is valid for subject use, examine the heading and its authority record to determine whether it meets all of the following criteria:

- **AACR2 coding.** The heading must be coded as conforming to AACR2 or compatible with AACR2. This is indicated by the presence of the value **c** or **d** in field 008/10.

*Note: In the LC ILS, field 008/10 corresponds with the box labeled **Descriptive cataloging rules** on the 008 input screen. To display this screen, click the 008 button on the authority record display. To return to the authority record display from the 008 input screen, click **Cancel**. When examining the 008 input screen, subject catalogers should take care not to inadvertently change any of the values that have been set. Clicking **Cancel** instead of **OK** to exit the screen ensures that any changes that may have accidentally been made are not saved.*

H 430 Name Headings as Subjects

3. *Determining whether a heading found in the LC Database may be assigned as a subject heading.*

- **AACR2 coding.** *(Continued)*

If the heading is not coded AACR2 or AACR2-d, establish the heading in AACR2 form, or request a descriptive cataloger to do so.

- **Subject heading usage coding.** The value **a** must appear in field 008/15, indicating that the heading is valid for use as a subject .

*Note: In the LC ILS the value **a** in field 008/15 corresponds with **a : Appropriate** beside the box labeled **Heading use-subject added entry (008/15)** on the 008 input screen. To display this screen, click the 008 button on the authority record display. To return to the authority record display from the 008 input screen, click **Cancel**.*

If the value **b** is present in field 008/15, there is normally a 667 **SUBJECT USAGE** field in the record describing what heading should be used instead (see illustration #2). If this field is not present, refer the matter to the Policy and Standards Division.

*Note: The value **b** in field 008/15 corresponds with **b : Not appropriate** beside the box labeled **Heading use-subject added entry (008/15)** on the 008 input screen. To display this screen, click the 008 button on the authority record display. To return to the authority record display from the 008 input screen, click **Cancel**.*

*All newly created name authority records are automatically assigned value **a** in field 008/15. The value is changed to **b** only when a proposal has been made and approved to have a 667 **SUBJECT USAGE** note added to the record to explicitly prohibit use of the heading as a subject (cf. H 432). Thus the presence of the value **a** in field 008/15 means only that no conscious decision has been made that the heading is inappropriate for use as a subject, and does not in itself mean that the heading is appropriate without regard to the other criteria listed in this section.*

Subject Usage Information in Name Authority Records H 432

BACKGROUND: *Information applicable to the usage of a name heading in subject cataloging may appear in a 667 field in the name authority record. Because the 667 field is also used for descriptive cataloging information, there may be more than one such field in a given NAR. The field that carries subject cataloging information always begins with the words **SUBJECT USAGE**. The information is presented using standardized wording. The procedures for requesting that such information be added to a name authority record are described in this and other individual **Subject Cataloging Manual** instruction sheets, as noted below. The following are examples of the types of subject cataloging information that can appear in this field:*

LINEAR NAME CHANGE IN POLITICAL JURISDICTION

[See procedures in H 708]

151 ## \$a Ceylon.
667 ## \$a SUBJECT USAGE: This heading is not valid for use as a
subject. Works about this place are entered under Sri Lanka.

SCOPE NOTE FOR SUBJECT USAGE

110 2# \$a Musée du Louvre.
667 ## \$a SUBJECT USAGE: This heading is used for works on the museum
housed within the Louvre Palace. Works on the building are
entered under the subject heading Louvre (Paris, France).

INFORMATION REGARDING A NAME HEADING NOT VALID FOR SUBJECT USAGE

110 2# \$a Commune de Paris (France : 1871)
667 ## \$a SUBJECT USAGE: This heading is not valid for use as a
subject. Works about this entity are entered under the
subject heading Paris (France)--History--Commune, 1871.

Information regarding the usage of geographic headings as subdivisions, which was formerly provided in this field, is now provided in a 781 field (see H 835).

H 432 Subject Usage Information in Name Authority Records

LC practice:

For the specific situations described in this instruction sheet, the procedure for requesting that a 667 field of this type be added to a name authority record is to submit a printout of the record to the Data Integrity Section annotated with the information that is proposed to be added. For all other situations in which it would be useful to input special subject information into a name authority record, consult the Policy and Standards Division.

Name Changes in Non-Jurisdictional Corporate Bodies H 460

BACKGROUND: *There are three types of corporate body name changes: (1) simple linear name changes, for example, **United States Steel** changes its name to **USX**; (2) mergers, that is, two or more bodies join to form a new body; or (3) splits, that is, a single body divides to form two or more new bodies. When any of these types of name change occurs, separate name authority records are created for each of the corporate body's various names and the earlier and/or later name(s) are recorded in 510 fields in each authority record. In the LC ILS, the 510 fields that represent the earlier name of the corporate body have a \$w control subfield containing the value **a** in the initial position. Examples:*

LINEAR NAME CHANGE

110 2# \$a Pillsbury Company
510 2# \$w a \$a Pillsbury Mills, Inc.

MERGER

110 2# \$a Ringling Brothers Barnum and Bailey Combined Shows
510 2# \$w a \$a Ringling Brothers
510 2# \$w a \$a Barnum and Bailey

This instruction sheet provides guidelines for subject catalogers in selecting which heading(s) to use when cataloging a work about a non-jurisdictional corporate body that has undergone a change of name.

Note: Occasionally non-jurisdictional corporate bodies are tagged 151 rather than 110. The principles in this instruction sheet apply to corporate bodies of that type as well. Example:

LINEAR NAME CHANGE

151 2# \$a Buckley Air Force Base (Colo.)
510 2# \$w a \$a Buckley Air National Guard Base (Colo.)

1. Assignment of name for latest period covered. Assign the heading for the name used by the body during the latest period covered by the work being cataloged.

Note: Do not construe an incidental reference to a recent period as being "coverage" of that period. For example, a work about the New York Central Railroad published in 1985 that mentions only briefly in the closing chapter the railroad's absorption into Amtrak and ConRail would not be considered to "cover" the recent period and would not be assigned the headings for Amtrak and ConRail. Only the heading for the New York Central Railroad would be assigned.

H 460 Name Changes in Non-Jurisdictional Corporate Bodies

2. *Assignment of earlier names.* If an earlier name is prominently featured in the work being cataloged, assign the heading for the earlier name as well. For example, an up-to-date history of the Ringling Bros. Barnum & Bailey Circus that prominently features the histories of its predecessors, the Ringling Bros. Circus and the Barnum and Bailey Circus, would be assigned the heading for its latest name, **Ringling Brothers Barnum and Bailey Combined Shows**, as well as the headings **Ringling Brothers** and **Barnum and Bailey**.

Subdividing Corporate Name Headings by Place H 475

BACKGROUND: *It is customary to divide by place certain categories of corporate name headings, primarily names of religions or religious orders, when they are assigned as subject headings. This authorization appears as the value **i** in field 008/06 (the box labeled **Direct/indirect geographic subdivision** on the 008 input screen in the LC ILS). This instruction sheet defines the types of corporate body headings that are appropriate for geographic subdivision and describes the procedures to determine whether a corporate body name has already been authorized for geographic subdivision or to add this authorization to an existing heading.*

1. Types of corporate body headings that may be divided by place. Geographic subdivision of a corporate body heading is used only to bring out the actual physical presence of the corporate body or its individual members in the place indicated by the geographic subdivision. Although this technique is used most frequently for religions and religious orders, there are occasionally other headings for which it is appropriate. *Examples:*

610 20 \$a Catholic Church \$z United States.
610 20 \$a Jesuits \$z France.
610 20 \$a Peace Corps (U.S.) \$z Ghana.
610 20 \$a International Labour Organisation \$z Switzerland.

LC practice:

2. Searching the LC Database. To determine whether geographic subdivision has already been authorized for a particular corporate body heading, retrieve the name authority record for the heading in the LC Database. If the code **i** appears in field 008/06, the heading may be divided geographically.

3. Proposals to divide corporate name headings geographically. If a new or existing heading has not been authorized to be divided by place and it is necessary to do so to catalog a current work, set the 008/06 data element in the name authority record to **i**.

*Note: An automated validation program reports on a daily basis new name headings where the 008/06 has been set to **i** or existing name headings where the 008/06 has been changed to **i**. These reports are sent to the Policy and Standards Division for review. CPSO either approves the 008/06 setting or, if the setting is not appropriate, changes it back to the default setting of **n** and notifies the individual who created or changed the record.*

Linear Jurisdictional Name Changes H 708 in Name Authority Records

BACKGROUND: *It is subject cataloging policy to assign as a subject heading or as a geographic subdivision, only the latest name of a political jurisdiction that has had one or more earlier names, as long as the territorial identity remains essentially unchanged. For example, although both **Ceylon** and **Sri Lanka** are valid as name headings, only **Sri Lanka** is used in subject cataloging. When a particular heading for a jurisdiction is not valid for use as a subject heading because a later name is used, a statement to that effect should appear in a 667 field in the name authority record for the earlier heading. The 667 field is labeled **SUBJECT USAGE**. Example:*

```
151 #0 $a Ceylon
667 ## $a SUBJECT USAGE: This heading is not valid for use as a
      subject. Works about this place are entered under Sri
      Lanka.
```

LC practice:

1. Searching the name authority file. When in doubt as to whether a given geographic name heading is valid for use as a subject heading, first search the LC Database to determine whether a decision has already been made and recorded in a 667 **SUBJECT USAGE** field. If this field is found in the authority record for the heading in question, follow the instructions as presented in the record.

2. Submitting proposals for subject usage decisions. If it is determined that no usage decision has yet been recorded in the authority record for the heading in question and that it is appropriate to record such a decision, submit a proposal to add the **SUBJECT USAGE** field, as follows:

a. Preparing a printout. Make a printout of the name authority record. In any blank area on the printout, write **Proposal for NAR**, using red ink if possible. Type or write the following instruction:

add: 667 **SUBJECT USAGE:** This heading is not valid for use as a subject. Works about this place are entered under [...].

Note: If the heading that is valid for subject usage is a subject heading, not a name heading, use the following wording for the second sentence of the note: "Works about this place are entered under the subject heading [...]."

Enclose this instruction in red parentheses.

H 708 Linear Jurisdictional Name Changes in Name Authority Records

2. Submitting proposals for subject usage decisions. (Continued)

b. Bibliographic records to be changed. Write on the printout the number of bibliographic records that will need to be changed if the proposal is approved (if none are submitted, write **0 changes**).

c. Submitting the proposal. Write your cataloger's code and the date on the printout. Submit the proposal, together with the work being cataloged and printouts of any bibliographic records to be changed, to the Data Integrity Section. After the proposal has been reviewed and approved, the 667 field will be input into the name authority record.

Note: These proposals appear on the weekly list in a separate section following the regular listing of new subject heading proposals.

Extinct Cities H 715

BACKGROUND: *Because ancient or medieval cities that went out of existence before the creation of modern states seldom produced official publications of their own, headings for these cities are only rarely assigned as descriptive access points. Therefore headings for all cities that ceased to exist before 1500 are established in the subject authority file, except for those that are established at the request of a descriptive cataloger for use as a main or added entry. The authority records for the latter reside in the name authority file (cf. H 405). Until 1991 these headings were established with the qualifier (**Ancient city**) or (**City**) depending on the time of existence. In 1991 both of these qualifiers were replaced by the qualifier (**Extinct city**). This instruction sheet provides guidelines for establishing extinct cities as subject headings. For guidelines on establishing archaeological sites, see H 1225.*

1. Extinct cities established as subject headings. Generally, establish as a subject heading the name of any city, town, village, etc., that ceased to exist by the year 1500, unless it has already been established as a name heading.

Note: Treat cities of the Americas that ceased to exist by 1500 as archaeological sites rather than as early cities, following the provisions of H 1225.

If it is necessary to assign as a subject heading the name of a city or town that existed beyond 1500, or that still exists, establish it as a name heading or request a descriptive cataloger to do so.

Since extinct cities that are needed as main or added entries are established in the name authority file, before establishing such a heading for subject cataloging purposes, search the name authority file to ascertain whether it already exists as a name heading. Then proceed as follows:

- *If the heading is in the name authority file and is coded AACR2, assign the heading as established.*
- *If the heading is in the name authority file but is not coded AACR2, establish it as a subject heading. Notify the Policy and Standards Division of the existence of the invalid heading in the name authority file so that it can be cancelled.*
- *If the heading is not in the name authority file, establish it as a subject heading according to the guidelines presented in this instruction sheet.*

H 715 Extinct Cities

2. Early versus modern name. Do not establish or assign as a subject heading the early name of a city if it is clear that the exact original site of the city in question has been continuously occupied until modern times. Instead, apply the general rule for a jurisdiction with name change, using only the latest form of the name established as a name heading. *Examples:*

London (England) [*not* Londinium]
Vienna (Austria) [*not* Vindobona]

Establish an extinct city as a subject heading, however, if a modern village is simply located near or over the extinct city, but has no direct connection with it except the incidental one of proximity.

3. Form of heading. Use the form of the name most commonly applied to the city in standard encyclopedias, gazetteers, etc. Justify this form in 670 fields in the subject authority record. It is not necessary to request the BGN decision.

Generally choose the form of name that is the *most common* ancient form. For example, establish **Larsa**, not **Tall Sankarah**, its modern name.

Add to each name the qualifier (**Extinct city**).

Do not qualify by the name of the current larger jurisdiction in which the city would be located today unless it is necessary to resolve a conflict. For example, the heading **Soli (Cyprus : Extinct city)** includes **Cyprus** as part of the qualifier because there were two ancient cities named Soli, one in what is now Cyprus and one in what is now Turkey.

Do not add the word **Site** to the heading for the city.

4. References. Make the following references when establishing the heading:

```
451 #0 $a [alternate early name(s)] (Extinct city)
451 #0 $a [alternate modern name(s)] ([modern country])
550 #0 $w g $a Extinct cities $z [modern country]
551 #0 $w g $a [modern country] $x Antiquities
```

*Note: For extinct cities in Great Britain the term [**modern country**] in the above model refers to the appropriate constituent country.*

Geographic Subdivision Information H 835 in Name Authority Records

LC practice:

1. Searching the LC Database. When in doubt as to how a given geographic name heading is to be used as a geographic subdivision, first search the LC Database to determine whether a decision has already been made and recorded in a 667 SUBJECT USAGE field or a 781 field. If either of these fields is found in the authority record for the heading in question, follow the instructions as presented in the record.

2. General guidelines for adding 781 fields.

a. Countries and first order divisions. Submit proposals to add 781 fields for those countries whose political status is especially complicated or unusual and for the less well-known island nations.

b. Other. Submit proposals to add 781 fields for entities that fall outside the scope of the normal rules for geographic subdivision, or for obsolete jurisdictions that are valid for subject usage, such as **Naples (Kingdom)** or **Babylonia**.

3. Submitting proposals. If the heading is of the type described in sec. 2.a.-2.b., proceed as follows:

a. Preparing a printout. Make a printout of the name authority record. In any blank area on the printout, write **Proposal for NAR**, using red ink if possible. Type or write one of the following instructions, as applicable:

add: 781 \$z (...)

or

add: 781 ‡z (...) ‡z (...)

Enclose this instruction in red parentheses.

b. Bibliographic records to be changed. Write on the printout the number of bibliographic records that will need to be changed if the proposal is approved (if none are submitted, write **0 changes**).

H 835 Geographic Subdivision Information in Name Authority Records

3. Submitting proposals. (Continued)

c. Submitting the proposal. Write your cataloger's code and the date on the printout. Submit the proposal, together with the work being cataloged and printouts of any bibliographic records to be changed, to the Data Integrity Section. After the proposal has been approved, the 781 field will be input into the name authority record.

Geographic Subdivision Information H 836 in Subject Authority Records

BACKGROUND: In February 1999, the Library of Congress began using the 781 field (Subdivision Heading Linking Entry–Geographic Subdivision) in subject authority records for new geographic subject headings that may also be used as geographic subdivisions. This field is used to record the geographic subdivision form in a format that is both eye-readable and manipulable for purposes of machine validation. For geographic subject headings that are not appropriate for use as geographic subdivisions, the Library began adding a 667 field stating that the heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision to their subject authority records.

Prior to February 1999, subdivision treatment decisions for selected geographic subject headings that fell outside the scope of the standard rules, or whose geographic status was ambiguous or not readily apparent, were recorded in 680 fields in the subject authority records for those entities, as in the following example:

```
151 #0 $a Samoan Islands
680 ## $i As a geographic subdivision, this heading is used
      directly.
```

A project was begun in 1999 to convert 680 fields of this type that appear in subject authority records created prior to February 1999 to 781 fields, and to add either a 667 or 781 field to all other subject authority records for geographic headings established before that date. If geographic subject authority records are encountered that lack either a 667 or 781 field, catalogers may report them by sending a printout to the Data Integrity Section.

For all newly proposed geographic subject headings that may be used as geographic subdivisions, catalogers are now required to add the 781 field. For those headings that are not appropriate for use as geographic subdivisions, such as celestial bodies and certain entities located in cities, catalogers are required to add a 667 field to the record stating that the heading is not valid for use as a geographic subdivision.

This instruction sheet describes the procedure for adding this 781 or 667 field to a newly proposed geographic subject heading. Instructions on adding this field to records for jurisdictional names that are established as name headings are provided in H 835.

H 836 Geographic Subdivision Information in Subject Authority Records

1. 781 field. When establishing a new geographic subject heading that may be used as a geographic subdivision, determine the form in which the heading is used as a geographic subdivision following the guidelines in H 830. Enter the text of the geographic subdivision form in a 781 field with second indicator 0. For a geographic heading that is used directly, enter the data in a single \$z subfield. For a geographic heading that is used indirectly through a larger geographic entity, enter the data in two successive \$z subfields. *Examples:*

```
151 ## $a Arabah Valley (Israel and Jordan)
781 #0 $z Arabah Valley (Israel and Jordan)

151 ## $a Halkyn Mountain (Wales)
781 #0 $z Wales $z Halkyn Mountain
```

2. 667 field. For a geographic subject heading that may not be used as a geographic subdivision, such as a celestial body, a structure or park in a city, etc., add a 667 field to the record containing the following text:

```
667 ## $a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic
      subdivision.
```

Examples:

```
151 ## $a Andromeda Galaxy
667 ## $a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic
      subdivision.

151 ## $a Roosevelt Drive (Bedford Hills, N.Y.)
667 ## $a This heading is not valid for use as a geographic
      subdivision.
```

Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$v Biography \$v Dictionaries

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and historic events.

\$v Biography \$v Dictionaries \$x French, [Italian, etc.]

\$x Biography \$x History and criticism

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and historic events.

\$v Blogs

Use under names of individual persons, classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for blogs by those persons, or about those persons, groups, or topics.

\$v Book reviews (H 2021)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for collections of appraisals of books on those places or topics.

See also –**Reviews**

\$x Buildings

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and exhibitions for works that discuss collectively the buildings of those corporate bodies or exhibitions.

See also –**Buildings, structures, etc.** under names of cities.

\$v By-laws

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of corporate bodies.

\$x By-products

Use under types of industries and processes.

\$v Calendars

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and individual corporate bodies, and under topical headings for works that list recurring, coming, or past events occurring in those places, associated with those organizations, or relating to those topics, and under names of individual persons for calendars that include information on events associated with the person or quotations from the person.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Calibration (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of scientific and technical instruments and equipment.

\$x Cantons (*H 713*)

Use under headings of the type [**topic**]-[**country**] for works discussing collectively the cantons of a country in relation to the topic, for example, **Transportation–Switzerland–Cantons**.

\$v Caricatures and cartoons

Use under names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings for collections or discussions of caricatures or pictorial humor about those subjects.

\$v Case studies (*H 1350*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings.

\$v Catalogs (*H 1360; H 1361*)

Use under types of objects, including types of merchandise, art objects, products, publications, collectors' items, technical equipment, etc., for listings of those objects that have been produced, that are available or located at particular places, or that occur on a particular market, often systematically arranged with descriptive details, prices, etc., accompanying each entry. Use **–Catalogs** under the heading **Excavations (Archaeology)** as well as under headings for individual archaeological sites for works listing objects found. Use **–Catalogs** under names of individual corporate bodies and types of organizations for works listing objects, art works, products, etc., produced by, located in, or available from those organizations. Also use **–Catalogs** under names of individual artists, craftspersons, families of artists or craftspersons, and corporate bodies for works listing their art works or crafts which are available or located in particular institutions or places. Also use under persons or families doing business as sellers under their own names.

See also **–Audiocassette catalogs; –Audiotape catalogs; –CD-ROM catalogs; –Compact disc catalogs; –Data tape catalogs; –Discography; –Exhibitions; –Film catalogs; –Microform catalogs**

\$v Catalogs and collections (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1360; H 1427*)

Use under types of natural objects and musical instruments.

Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Personnel management

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of industries and organizations.

\$x Philosophy (H 1929)

Use under names of individual persons who are not philosophers, and under groups of literary authors, uniform titles of sacred works, and topical headings.

\$v Photographs (H 1935)

Use under subjects for works that consist of actual photographs, that is, photographic prints or digital photographs, rather than reproductions of photographs.

\$v Photographs from space (1210.5)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., and under topical headings for collections of photographs taken from outer space. Do not use for cartographic materials.

\$x Physiological aspects

Use under types of activities and mental conditions for works on the relationship between an individual's activity, mental state, etc., and his physiology.

See also –**Physiology** under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual and groups of animals and plants, and individual organs and regions of the body.

\$x Physiological effect (May Subd Geog)

Use under individual chemicals, materials, individual plants and groups of plants, and environmental phenomena or conditions for works on their effect on the functions of living organisms.

\$v Pictorial works (H 1935)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings. Also use under literary works entered under author for works consisting of pictures pertaining to the work as a physical object or, in the case of dramatic works, to productions of the work.

See also –**Portraits** under names of individual persons who lived after 1400, individual families, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and individual wars.

H 1095 Free-Floating Subdivisions

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Planning

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and under types of activities, facilities, industries, services, undertakings, etc., for works that describe or discuss the planning process.

\$v Poetry (*H 1800*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., names of individual persons, families, and corporate bodies, and under classes of persons, ethnic groups, and topical headings for collections of poetry and individual poems on those subjects.

\$x Political activity (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1942*)

Use under names of individual persons, families, corporate bodies, and military services, and under classes of persons, individual Christian denominations, and types of corporate bodies for works on the political participation of those persons or organizations.

See also –**Politics and government** under ethnic groups

See also –**Political and social views** under individual persons and groups of literary authors.

\$x Political aspects (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1942*)

Use under individual religious sects and denominations and topical headings for works on the political dimensions or implications of nonpolitical topics.

See also –**Politics and government** under names of countries, cities, etc., and under ethnic groups.

\$v Popular works (*H 1943.5*)

Use under scientific, technical, and legal headings, etc., for works written for the layperson; and under medical disciplines, individual diseases, and under headings of the type [*part of the body*]–**Diseases** for materials written for the layperson.

\$v Posters (*H 1945.5*)

Use under names of countries, cities, etc., individual persons and corporate bodies, classes of persons, ethnic groups, individual wars, and topical headings for individual posters and collections and/or discussions of posters about those subjects.

\$x Power supply (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of buildings, installations, equipment, industries, etc.

\$x Practice (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of professions.

Free-floating Subdivisions H 1095

FORM AND TOPICAL SUBDIVISIONS OF GENERAL APPLICATION:

\$x Vibration (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of equipment, structures, and vehicles.

Video catalogs , see –**Film catalogs**

\$x Vocational guidance (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2232*)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies and military services, and under occupations, fields of endeavor, and types of industries, trades, etc., for works describing careers in those organizations or fields and/or offering advice on how to prepare for, enter, and succeed in those careers. Use under classes of persons or occupational groups only if the heading for the corresponding field or activity does not exist or cannot be established.

\$x Voivodeships (*H 713*)

Use under headings of the type [*topic*]**–Poland** for works discussing collectively the voivodeships of Poland in relation to the topic.

\$x Waste disposal (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, industrial processes, facilities, and institutions.

\$x Waste minimization (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under types of industries, industrial processes, facilities, and institutions.

\$x Water-supply

Use under topical headings.

\$x Web-based instruction (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under topical headings.

\$x Weight

Use under types of objects, substances, individual animals and groups of animals, and organs and regions of the body for works on the techniques of making weight measurements of those items, or for the results of such measurements.

\$x Weights and measures

Use under types of commodities and merchandise for systems of weights and measures established for those items.

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Classes of Persons H 1100

\$v **Longitudinal studies** (H 1848)

\$x **Manuscripts**

\$x **Medals** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Medical care** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Medical examinations** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Mental health** (May Subd Geog) (H 1890)

\$x **Mental health services** (May Subd Geog) (H 1890)

\$x **Monuments** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Mortality** (May Subd Geog)

Do not use under headings for persons with specific diseases. Use [*disease*]-**Mortality** instead (cf. H 1150).

\$x **Museums** (May Subd Geog) (H 1916)

Music, see –**Songs and music**

\$x **Nursing home care** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Nutrition** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Nutrition** \$x **Requirements** (May Subd Geog)

\$v **Obituaries**

\$v **Outlines, syllabi, etc.**

Outside employment, see –**Supplementary employment**

\$x **Pastoral counseling of** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Pensions** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Pensions** \$x **Cost-of-living adjustments** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Pensions** \$x **Effect of inflation on** (May Subd Geog) (H 1580)

\$x **Pensions** \$x **Unclaimed benefits** (May Subd Geog)

Personal finance, see –**Finance, Personal**

\$x **Physiology** (May Subd Geog)

\$v **Pictorial works** (H 1935)

Places frequented, see –**Homes and haunts**

\$v **Poetry** (H 1800)

\$x **Political activity** (May Subd Geog) (H 1942)

\$v **Portraits** (H 1935)

\$v **Posters** (H 1945.5)

\$v **Prayers and devotions**

\$x **Prayers and devotions** \$x **History and criticism**

\$x **Press coverage** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Professional ethics** (May Subd Geog) (H 1949)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$x **Professional relationships** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Promotions** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Prophecies**

H 1100 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Classes of Persons

\$x **Protection** (*May Subd Geog*)

Psychiatric care, see –**Mental health services**

\$x **Psychological testing** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 2186)

\$x **Psychology**

Do not use under classes of afflicted persons if the heading for the disease or affliction exists. Use –**Psychological aspects** under the heading for the disease or affliction instead (cf. H 1150).

\$x **Public opinion** (H 1955)

Use for works on public opinion about the group. For works on attitudes or opinions held by members of the group, see –**Attitudes**.

Qualifications, see –**Rating of**; –**Selection and appointment**

\$v **Quotations** (H 1969)

Use for collections or discussions of quotations by or about the group.

Quotations, maxims, etc., see –**Quotations**

\$x **Rating of** (*May Subd Geog*)

Reading habits or interests, see –**Books and reading**

\$x **Recreation** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Recruiting** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$v **Registers** (H 1558)

\$x **Rehabilitation** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Reinstatement** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$x **Religious life** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 2015.5)

\$x **Relocation** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$x **Reporting to** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$x **Research** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 2020)

\$x **Residence requirements** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$x **Resignation** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under occupational groups and types of employees.

\$x **Respite care** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Retirement** (*May Subd Geog*)

Salaries, allowances, etc., see –**Salaries, etc.**

Salaries, commissions, etc., see –**Salaries, etc.**

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Ethnic Groups H 1103

\$v **Case studies** (H 1350)

\$v **Census** (H 1366)

\$v **Census, [date]** (H 1366)

Ceremonies, see –**Rites and ceremonies**

\$x **Charitable contributions** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Charities**

Use for works on charities serving or benefitting the group.

Chronology, see –**History–Chronology** for works listing events and dates in the history of the group. For works on the system of arranging time practiced by a particular group, establish headings of the type **Chronology, [...]**, for example, **Chronology, Igbo**.

\$x **Civil rights** (May Subd Geog)

Civilization, use the unsubdivided heading for the ethnic group, or headings of the type **Civilization, Celtic; Civilization, Germanic; Civilization, Slavic**; etc., where they have been established.

\$x **Claims**

\$x **Clothing** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Collectibles** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Colonization** (May Subd Geog)

\$v **Comic books, strips, etc.**

\$x **Commerce** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Communication**

Contributions, Charitable, see –**Charitable contributions**

\$v **Correspondence** (H 1480)

Costume, see –**Clothing**

\$x **Counseling of** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Craniology** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Crimes against** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Cultural assimilation** (May Subd Geog)

Cultural life, see –**Intellectual life**

Customs, see –**Social life and customs**

\$x **Death**

Demography, see –**Population**

\$x **Dental care** (May Subd Geog)

Devotions, see –**Prayers and devotions**

\$v **Diaries** (H 1538)

Do not use under headings for nationalities. Use ... **diaries** instead, for example, **American diaries; Canadian diaries**.

\$v **Directories** (H 1558)

\$v **Discography** (H 1361)

H 1103 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Ethnic Groups

\$x **Diseases** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Domestic animals** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$v **Drama** (*H 1780*)

\$x **Drug use** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Dwellings** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for works on residential buildings for the group from the standpoint of architecture, construction, ethnology, etc. For works on social or economic aspects of the provision of housing for the group, see –**Housing**. For works on the actual homes of individual members of the group from an architectural or historical point of view, see –**Homes and haunts**.

\$v **Early works to 1800** (*H 1576*)

\$x **Economic conditions** (*H 1578*)

\$x **Economic conditions** \$y **16th century** (*H 1578*)

\$x **Economic conditions** \$y **17th century** (*H 1578*)

\$x **Economic conditions** \$y **18th century** (*H 1578*)

\$x **Economic conditions** \$y **19th century** (*H 1578*)

\$x **Economic conditions** \$y **20th century** (*H 1578*)

\$x **Economic conditions** \$y **21st century** (*H 1578*)

\$x **Education** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1579*)

\$x **Education** \$x **Law and legislation** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1705*)

\$x **Education (Continuing education)** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1579*)

\$x **Education (Early childhood)** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1579*)

\$x **Education (Elementary)** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1579*)

\$x **Education (Graduate)** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1579*)

\$x **Education (Higher)** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1579*)

\$x **Education (Middle school)** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1579*)

\$x **Education (Preschool)** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1579*)

\$x **Education (Primary)** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1579*)

\$x **Education (Secondary)** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1579*)

\$x **Employment** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Employment** \$z **Foreign countries**

Employment, Supplementary, see –**Supplementary employment**

\$x **Ethnic identity**

Do not use under **Jews**. Use **Jews–Identity** instead.

\$x **Ethnobiology** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Ethnobotany** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Ethnozoology** (*May Subd Geog*)

Family relationships, see –**Kinship**

Fellowships, see –**Scholarships, fellowships, etc.**

\$v **Fiction** (*H 1790*)

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Ethnic Groups H 1103

\$x **Finance** (H 1624)

Use for works on the financial affairs of the group as a whole.

\$x **Finance** \$x **Law and legislation** (May Subd Geog) (H 1705)

\$x **Finance, Personal** (H 1624)

\$x **Fire use** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Fishing** (May Subd Geog)

\$v **Folklore** (H 1627)

\$x **Food** (May Subd Geog)

\$z **Foreign countries** (H 1919.5)

\$x **Foreign influences** (H 1675)

Use for works discussing the foreign influences on the group in general. Establish headings for specific influences as needed in the form: [*ethnic group*]-[...] **influences**.

\$x **Funeral customs and rites** (May Subd Geog)

Do not use under **Jews**. Use **Jewish funeral rites and ceremonies** instead.

\$x **Gambling** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Games** (May Subd Geog)

\$v **Genealogy** (H 1631)

Government, see –**Politics and government**

\$x **Government policy** (May Subd Geog) (H 1642)

\$x **Government relations** (H 1942)

Use for relations between the group as a whole and the government of the place in which they reside.

Haunts, see –**Homes and haunts**

\$x **Health and hygiene** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Historiography**

\$x **History** (H 1647)

\$x **History** \$y **16th century** (H 1647)

\$x **History** \$y **17th century** (H 1647)

\$x **History** \$y **18th century** (H 1647)

\$x **History** \$y **19th century** (H 1647)

\$x **History** \$y **20th century** (H 1647)

\$x **History** \$y **21st century** (H 1647)

History–Anniversaries, etc., see –**Anniversaries, etc.**

\$x **History** \$v **Chronology** (H 1367)

\$x **History** \$v **Sources** (H 2080)

\$x **Home care** (May Subd Geog)

H 1103 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Ethnic Groups

\$x **Homes and haunts** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for works on the actual homes of individual members of the group from an architectural or historical point of view. Also use for works on the favorite places of group members or places they habitually frequent or with which they are associated. For works on residential buildings for the group from the standpoint of architecture, construction, ethnology, etc., see **–Dwellings**. For works on social or economic aspects of the provision of housing for the group, see **–Housing**.

\$x **Hospice care** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Hospital care** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Hospitals** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Housing** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for works on social or economic aspects of the provision of housing for the group. For works on residential buildings for the group from the standpoint of architecture, construction, ethnology, etc., see **–Dwellings**. For works on the actual homes of individual members of the group from an architectural or historical point of view, see **–Homes and haunts**.

\$v **Humor**

\$x **Hunting** (*May Subd Geog*)

Hygiene, see **–Health and hygiene**

Iconography, see **–Pictorial works**

Identity, Ethnic, see **–Ethnic identity**

Identity, Race, see **–Race identity**

\$x **Implements** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Industries** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use only under headings for preliterate groups.

Influences, Foreign, see **–Foreign influences**

\$x **Information services** (*H 1675.5*)

Injuries, see **–Wounds and injuries**

\$x **Institutional care** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Intellectual life**

\$x **Intellectual life** \$y **16th century**

\$x **Intellectual life** \$y **17th century**

\$x **Intellectual life** \$y **18th century**

\$x **Intellectual life** \$y **19th century**

\$x **Intellectual life** \$y **20th century**

\$x **Intellectual life** \$y **21st century**

\$x **Intelligence levels** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Intelligence testing** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 2186*)

\$v **Interviews** (*H 1678*)

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Ethnic Groups H 1103

\$x **Jewelry** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Job stress** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$v **Juvenile drama** (*H 1690*)

\$v **Juvenile fiction** (*H 1690*)

\$v **Juvenile humor** (*H 1690*)

\$v **Juvenile poetry** (*H 1690*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** (*H 1574*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Assassination**

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Children**

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Death and burial**

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Education** (*H 1579*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$v **Folklore** (*H 1627*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$v **Genealogy** (*H 1631*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Mythology** (*H 1998*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Religious aspects** (*H 1998*)

\$x **Kings and rulers** \$x **Succession**

\$x **Kinship** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for works on the group's system of rules governing descent, succession, marriage, etc., and determining the relationships of individuals.

\$x **Land tenure** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Languages**

Use for works discussing collectively the languages spoken by the group. Do not use to designate a linguistic family for which a separate heading is established, for example, **Papuan languages**; **Slavic languages**.

See H 1154 for further subdivisions used under languages.

\$x **Languages** \$v **Texts** (*H 2109*)

Law and legislation, see –Legal status, laws, etc.

\$x **Legal status, laws, etc.** (*May Subd Geog*) (*H 1705*)

\$x **Library resources**

\$x **Life skills assessment** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$v **Life skills guides**

\$v **Literary collections**

\$v **Longitudinal studies** (*H 1848*)

\$x **Manuscripts** (*H 1855*)

\$v **Maps** (*H 1865*)

\$x **Marriage customs and rites** (*May Subd Geog*)

Do not use under **Jews**. Use **Jewish marriage customs and rites** instead.

\$x **Material culture** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Mathematics**

H 1103 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Ethnic Groups

\$x **Medals** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Medical care** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Medical examinations** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Medicine** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Medicine** \$v **Formulae, receipts, prescriptions**

\$x **Mental health** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 1890)

\$x **Mental health services** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 1890)

\$x **Migrations**

\$x **Missions** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for works discussing missions to the group. For missions and missionary activities of the group or nationality, use headings of the type **Missions, [...]**, for example, **Missions, Belgian; Missions, Tamil**. Do not use **–Missions** under **Jews**; use **Missions to Jews** instead. For the missionary activities of Judaism, use **Proselytizing–Judaism**.

\$x **Money** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Monuments** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Mortality** (*May Subd Geog*)

Mortuary customs, see **–Funeral customs and rites**

\$x **Museums** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 1916)

Do not use under **Jews**. Use **Jewish museums** instead.

\$v **Music** (H 1917)

Use for music of the group. For music about the group, see **–Songs and music**.

\$x **Music** \$v **Bibliography**

\$x **Music** \$v **Discography**

\$x **Music** \$x **History and criticism**

\$x **Name** (H 1919)

\$v **Newspapers** (H 1920)

Use under ethnic groups for newspapers of those groups. For example, use under ethnic groups in the United States for individual American ethnic newspapers. For works about ethnic newspapers, use headings of the type [...] **newspapers**, for example, **German American newspapers**.

\$x **Nutrition** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$v **Obituaries**

\$x **Origin**

\$v **Outlines, syllabi, etc.**

Outside employment, see **–Supplementary employment**

\$x **Pastoral counseling of** (*May Subd Geog*)

\$x **Pensions** (*May Subd Geog*)

Personal finance, see **–Finance, Personal**

\$x **Physiology** (*May Subd Geog*)

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Corporate Bodies H 1105

\$x **Language**

\$x **Libraries**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies having library systems of more than one library for which no corporate heading exists or can be established.

\$x **Library** (H 1427)

Use under names of individual corporate bodies provided that the corporate body is the owner or collector and the collection is not a formally organized library. If the collection is a formally organized library, it should be established as a name heading.

\$x **Library resources**

\$v **Literary collections**

\$x **Management**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies, including government agencies, galleries, museums, parks, etc. Use –**Administration** under names of individual libraries and individual institutions in the spheres of health, social services, and education.

\$x **Map collections** (H 1427)

\$v **Maps** (H 1865)

\$x **Maps** \$v **Bibliography**

\$v **Maps for children**

\$x **Medals**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies other than military services for commemorative or honorary medals issued or awarded in relation to the body. Use –**Medals, badges, decorations, etc.**, under military services.

\$x **Membership**

Use for works on the conditions of belonging to the organization.

\$v **Microform catalogs** (H 1361)

\$x **Museums** (H 1916)

\$x **Musical instrument collections** (H 1427)

\$x **Name** (H 1919)

\$x **Natural history collections** (H 1427)

\$x **Numismatic collections** (H 1427)

\$x **Officials and employees**

Use under names of individual international, government, or quasi-governmental agencies.

Use –**Employees** under names of individual nongovernmental corporate bodies.

See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

\$x **Officials and employees** \$x **Accidents**

\$x **Officials and employees** \$x **Furloughs**

\$x **Officials and employees** \$x **Leave regulations**

\$x **Officials and employees** \$x **Salaries, etc.**

\$x **Officials and employees** \$x **Salaries, etc.** \$x **Regional disparities**

H 1105 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Corporate Bodies

\$x **Officials and employees** \$x **Turnover**

\$x **On postage stamps** (H 1945)

\$x **Organs**

Use under names of individual corporate bodies having one or more organs, especially churches, concert halls, etc.

\$x **Party work**

Use under names of individual political parties.

\$x **Performances** (May Subd Geog)

Use under performing groups of all types for works about their performances.

\$x **Personnel management**

\$x **Personnel records**

\$x **Photograph collections** (H 1427)

\$v **Pictorial works** (H 1935)

\$x **Planning**

\$v **Platforms**

Use under names of individual political parties.

\$v **Poetry** (H 1800)

\$x **Political activity** (May Subd Geog) (H 1942)

\$x **Positions**

Use under names of individual government agencies.

\$x **Poster collections** (H 1427)

\$v **Posters** (H 1945.5)

\$x **Presidents**

See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

\$x **Press coverage** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Privileges and immunities**

Use under names of individual international agencies.

\$x **Procurement**

Use under names of individual government agencies.

\$x **Public opinion** (H 1955)

\$x **Public records**

Use under names of individual government agencies.

\$x **Public relations** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Publishing** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Purges**

Use under names of individual political parties.

\$v **Records and correspondence**

\$v **Registers** (H 1558)

\$x **Religion** (H 1997)

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

\$x **Family** (H 1631)

Use for discussions of the person's family or relations with family members. Also use for genealogical works. Assign an additional heading for the name of the family.

See also –**Marriage**

\$v **Fiction** (H 1790)

Use as a form subdivision for works of fiction about the person. For criticism or discussions of fiction about a person, assign [*name of person*]**–In literature** as a topical heading.

\$x **Fictional works**

Use for criticism of fictional works by a literary author. Do not use under authors who write principally fiction.

See also –**Prose**

\$v **Film adaptations**

Use for discussions or collections of motion picture or video adaptations of the person's creative works.

Film and video adaptations, see –**Film adaptations**

\$x **Finance, Personal** (H 1624)

Use for discussions of the person's financial affairs.

See also –**Estate**; –**Will**

\$x **First editions**

\$x **First editions** \$v **Bibliography**

Folktales, see –**Legends**

\$x **Forgeries** (May Subd Geog)

Use for discussions of forgeries of the person's creative works or signature. In the case of individual forgeries, assign an additional heading for the name of the forger.

\$x **Freemasonry**

Use for works discussing the person's membership or participation in the Freemasons.

Frequented places, see –**Homes and haunts**

\$x **Friends and associates**

Use for discussions of the person's close and immediate contacts, such as companions, co-workers.

See also –**Adversaries**; –**Contemporaries**; –**Disciples**; –**Employees**; –**Family**; –**Relations with** [*specific class of persons or ethnic group*]

Funeral, see –**Death and burial**

Genealogy, see –**Family**

Glossaries, see –**Language–Glossaries, etc.**

Grave, see –**Tomb**

\$x **Hadith**

Use under imams for works on the oral tradition concerning the deeds and saying of the imam.

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

Handwriting, see –**Autographs**

\$x **Harmony** (*H 1438*)

Use under composers for works discussing their uses of harmony.

Haunts, see –**Homes and haunts**

\$x **Health**

Use for works about the person's state of health, including diseases suffered and accounts of specific diseases. For accounts of specific diseases assign an additional heading of the type: [*disease*]–**Patients**–[*place*]–**Biography**.

See also –**Alcohol use**; –**Drug use**; –**Mental health**

\$x **Herbarium** (*H 1427*)

\$x **Homes and haunts** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for works discussing the person's homes or dwellings, favorite places, places he or she habitually frequented, or places associated with the person in some way.

See also –**Birthplace**; –**Palaces**; –**Shrines**; –**Travel**

\$v **Humor**

Use as a form subdivision for humorous works about the person as well as for works about the person's sense of humor or use of humor. For pictorial humor, see –**Caricatures and cartoons**.

Iconography, see –**Pictorial works**

\$v **Illustrations** (*H 1659*)

Use for collections or discussions of pictorial representations of the person's written works.

For works of art depicting the person see –**Art**; –**Portraits**

Imitations, see –**Parodies, imitations, etc.**

\$x **Impeachment**

\$x **Imprisonment**

Use for works discussing periods in which the person was actually imprisoned in a correctional institution or a prisoner of war camp. For works discussing periods in which the person was held captive in bondage or confinement, especially under house arrest, as a hostage, or in battle, see –**Captivity**, [*dates*].

See also –**Exile**

\$x **In bookplates**

\$x **In literature** (*H 362; H 1780; H 1790; H 1800*)

Use for discussions of the person as a theme in belles lettres, including musical dramatic works and individual literary genres. The free-floating phrase heading [*name of person*] **in fiction, drama, poetry, etc.** was discontinued in August 1993. For works of belles-lettres about the person, or in which he or she appears as a character, assign the appropriate form subdivision, for example, –**Drama**, –**Fiction**, –**Literary collections**, –**Poetry**.

\$x **In mass media**

\$x **In motion pictures**

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

\$x **In opera**

\$x **Inauguration, [date]** (H 1078)

\$x **Influence** (H 1675)

Use for works discussing the person's impact on other persons, groups, movements, or national literatures. Assign an additional heading for the person, group, movement, or literature influenced. For works on public response and reception, praise, etc., of the artistic or literary works of persons active in the fine arts, literature, music, and performing arts, see **–Appreciation**.

\$x **Information services** (H 1675.5)

Interment, see **–Death and burial**

Interpretation, see **–Criticism and interpretation**

\$v **Interviews** (H 1678)

Use for works consisting of transcripts of what was said during the course of interviews or conversations with the person on one or more occasions.

Journals, see **–Diaries**

Journeys, see **–Travel**

\$v **Juvenile drama**

\$v **Juvenile fiction**

\$v **Juvenile humor**

\$v **Juvenile poetry**

\$x **Kidnapping, [date]** (H 1078)

\$x **Knowledge** \$x **Agriculture, [America, etc.]**

Use for works discussing the person's knowledge of a specific topic, whether explicitly stated or inferred from his life and work. Also use for discussions of the person's educational background in a specific topic. Assign an additional heading for the specific topic. For works on the person's opinions or attitudes on a specific topic, whether explicitly stated or inferred, assign the heading for the person and an additional heading for the specific topic. For discussions of the themes in the person's creative works, see **–Themes, motives**.

Knowledge–Religion see **–Religion**

\$x **Knowledge and learning**

Use for works about the person's formal or informal learning or scholarship in general. For knowledge or learning of specific topics, see **–Knowledge–[topic]**.

\$x **Language**

Use for works on the person's language in general on the linguistic rather than the artistic level. For works on specific linguistic topics, assign an additional heading for the topic.

See also **–Literary art; –Literary style; –Oratory; –Technique; –Versification**

\$x **Language** \$v **Glossaries, etc.** (H 1540)

Last illness, see **–Death and burial**

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

\$x Last years

See also –**Death and burial**

Leadership, Military, see –**Military leadership**

Learning, see –**Knowledge and learning** \$v **Legends** (H 1627; H 1795)

Use as a form subdivision for stories about the person which have come down from the past and which are popularly taken as historical though not verifiable.

See also –**Romances**

Letters, see –**Correspondence**

\$x Library (H 1427)

Use for works discussing the person's own library.

See also –**Books and reading**

\$x Library \$v Marginal notes

Use for marginal notes in works belonging to the person, whether written by the person or by others.

\$x Library \$v Microform catalogs (H 1361)

\$x Library resources

Use for works describing the resources or special collections available in libraries for research or study about the person.

\$x Literary art

Use for discussions of a non-literary person's literary ability and accomplishments, including discussions of literary works by persons normally identified with another field. Do not use under multi-career persons who are also recognized as literary authors. For discussions on the attribution of authorship of specific works to the person, see –**Authorship**.

See also –**Written works**

\$v Literary collections

Use for literary anthologies about the person that involve two or more literary forms. For anthologies in one literary form, see the form, for example, –**Drama**; –**Fiction**; –**Poetry**.

\$x Literary style

Use under literary authors for discussions of rhetoric, figures of speech, and artistic use of language in general.

See also –**Language**; –**Technique**

Litigation, see –**Trials, litigation, etc.**

\$x Manuscripts

Use for works discussing writings made by hand, typewriter, etc., by or about the person. Do not use for individual works in manuscript form.

See also –**Archives**; –**Autographs**; –**Correspondence**; –**Diaries**; –**Notebooks, sketchbooks, etc.**

\$v Manuscripts \$v Facsimiles (H 1595)

Use as a form subdivision under composers and literary authors for facsimile editions of manuscripts of individual works or collections of works.

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

\$x **Map collections** (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collections of maps.

Marginalia, see –**Library**–**Marginal notes**; –**Scholia**

\$x **Marriage**

See also –**Divorce**

\$x **Medals**

\$v **Meditations**

Use as a form subdivision for works containing descriptions of thoughts or reflections on the spiritual significance of the person's life or deeds.

\$x **Mental health** (H 1890)

Use for works discussing the person's state of mental health, including mental illness and accounts of specific mental disorders. For accounts of specific disorders or situations, assign an additional heading of the type: [*disease*]–**Patients**–[*place*]–**Biography**; **Psychotherapy patients**–[*place*]–**Biography**; etc.

\$x **Military leadership**

\$x **Miracles**

Use under persons to whom miracles are attributed.

\$x **Monuments** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 1334)

Use for works about monuments erected in honor of the person.

See also –**Museums**; –**Shrines**; –**Statues**; –**Tomb**

\$x **Motion picture plays**

Use for discussions of film scripts written by a literary author. Do not use under authors who write principally motion picture plays. For discussions of motion picture adaptations of the person's creative works, see –**Film adaptations**.

Motives, themes, see –**Themes, motives**

\$x **Museums** (*May Subd Geog*) (H 1916)

Use for works on museums devoted to the person.

See also –**Archives**; –**Collectibles**; –**Death mask**; –**Relics**; –**Shrines**; –**Tomb**

Music, see –**Songs and music**

\$x **Musical instrument collections** (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collections of musical instruments.

\$v **Musical settings**

Use as a form subdivision for musical scores or sound recordings in which writings or words of the person have been set to music.

\$x **Musical settings** \$x **History and criticism**

\$x **Name** (H 1919)

Use for discussions of the history, orthography, etymology, etc., of the person's name.

See also –**Anonyms and pseudonyms**; –**Titles**

\$x **Natural history collections** (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collections of natural history items or specimens.

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

\$v Notebooks, sketchbooks, etc.

Use for collections or discussions of the person's notebooks, sketchbooks, etc. Also use for individual works.

\$x Numismatic collections (*H 1427*)

Use for works about the person's numismatics collections.

See also –**Coin collections**

\$x Numismatics

Use for works discussing the representation of the person on coins, tokens, medals, paper money, etc.

See also –**Medals**

Old age, see –**Last years**

Opponents, see –**Adversaries**

\$x On postage stamps (*H 1945*)

Use for works about the portrayal of the person on postage stamps.

\$x On television

Use for works that discuss television programming about the person, including dramatic or documentary shows, news programs, and advertising. Do not use for works on the person as a television actor, television host, news anchor, etc.

\$x Oratory

Use for works discussing the person's public speaking ability.

\$v Outlines, syllabi, etc.

\$x Palaces (*May Subd Geog*)

Paraphrases, see –**Adaptations**

\$x Pardon

Use for works about the person's legal release from the penalty of an offense.

\$v Parodies, imitations, etc.

Use as both a form and topical subdivision for imitations, either comic or distorted, of the person's creative works.

Patronage of the arts, see –**Art patronage**

\$x Performances (*May Subd Geog*)

Use under performing artists or performers of all types for works about their performances. Also use under composers, choreographers, etc. for works about performances of their compositions or works.

See also –**Dramatic production; –Stage history**

Personal finance, see –**Finance, Personal**

Personality, see –**Psychology**

\$x Philosophy (*H 1929*)

Use for discussions of the individual's personal philosophy. Do not use under names of philosophers.

See also –**Aesthetics; –Ethics; –Religion**

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

\$x **Photograph collections** (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collections of photographs.

Pictorial humor, see –**Caricatures and cartoons**

\$v **Pictorial works** (H 1935)

Use for works consisting of pictures or visual images relating to the person.

See also –**Art**; –**Caricatures and cartoons**; –**Comic books, strips, etc.**; –**Illustrations**;
–**Monuments**; –**Portraits**

Place of birth, see –**Birthplace**

Places frequented, see –**Homes and haunts**

Plots, see –**Stories, plots, etc.**

\$x **Poetic works**

Use for discussions of poetic works by a literary author. Do not use under authors who write principally poetry.

\$v **Poetry** (H 1800)

Use as a form subdivision for works of poetry about the person. For criticism or discussions of poetry about a person, assign [*name of person*]–**In literature** as a topical heading.

\$x **Political activity** (May Subd Geog)

\$x **Political and social views**

Use for works discussing the person's political and/or social views in general. Do not assign to works written by the person on political or social topics. For works on specific topics, assign the heading for the topic along with the heading for the person (subdivided by –**Political and social views**, if appropriate).

\$v **Portraits** (H 1935)

Use for collections or discussions of portraits of persons living after 1400 A.D. For persons living before 1400, see –**Art**.

See also –**Caricatures and cartoons**; –**Death mask**; –**Numismatics**; –**On postage stamps**;
–**Posters**; –**Self-portraits**; –**Statues**

\$x **Poster collections** (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collections of posters.

\$v **Posters** (H 1945.5)

Use for collections or discussions of posters depicting the person.

\$v **Prayers and devotions**

Use as a form subdivision, particularly under divine persons or saints, for works of devotions directed to those persons whose help or prayers are requested.

\$x **Prayers and devotions** \$x **History and criticism**

\$x **Pre-existence**

Use for works discussing the person's existence in a previous state or life.

Professional life, see –**Career in [specific field or discipline]**

\$x **Prophecies**

Use for works about prophecies made by the person.

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

\$x **Prose**

Use for discussions of prose works or passages by a literary author. Do not use under authors who write principally prose.

See also –**Fictional works**

Pseudonyms, see –**Anonyms and pseudonyms**

\$x **Psychology**

Use for discussions or interpretations of the person's psychological traits, personality, character, etc.

See also –**Mental health**

\$x **Public opinion** (H 1955)

Use for works about public opinion about the person. For works on public response and reception, praise, etc. of the artistic or literary works of persons active in the fine arts, literature, music, and performing arts, see –**Appreciation**.

Public speaking, see –**Oratory**

\$v **Quotations** (H 1969)

Use for collections or discussions of quotations by or about the person.

See also –**Allusions**; –**Calendars**

\$x **Radio and television plays**

Use for discussions of scripts written by a literary author expressly for radio or television. Do not use under authors who write principally radio or television plays. For discussions of audio or video adaptations of the person's creative works, see –**Audio adaptations**; –**Film adaptations**.

Reading habits, see –**Books and reading**

\$x **Relations with** [*specific class of persons or ethnic group*]

Assign an additional heading for the specific group with appropriate subdivision if necessary.

Relations with employees, see –**Employees**

Relations with family, see –**Family**

Relations with friends and associates, see –**Friends and associates**

\$x **Relations with men**

Use for works on intimate associations. For works on relations with an individual man, assign an additional heading for the man.

\$x **Relations with women**

Use for works on intimate associations. For works on relations with an individual woman, assign an additional heading for the woman.

\$x **Relics** (*May Subd Geog*)

Includes works on disinterred bones.

See also –**Death mask**

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

\$x **Religion** (H 1997)

Use for discussions of the person's religious beliefs and practices. Also includes the person's knowledge or views on religion in general. Do not use under names of theologians.

See also –**Ethics**

Residences, see –**Homes and haunts**

\$x **Resignation from office**

See also –**Abdication**, [*date*]; –**Impeachment**

Rhetoric, see –**Literary art**; –**Literary style**; –**Oratory**

\$v **Romances** (H 1795)

Use as a form subdivision under names of historical or legendary figures for medieval tales about the person based chiefly on legends of chivalric love and adventure. Do not use for romances written by the person.

Satire, see –**Humor**

Sayings, see –**Quotations**

Scholarship, see –**Knowledge and learning**

\$v **Scholia**

Use for marginal annotations, explanatory comments or remarks, especially those by early grammarians on the text of a classical work.

\$x **Scientific apparatus collections** (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collections of scientific apparatus.

Screenplays, see –**Motion picture plays**

\$x **Seal**

Use for works discussing the devices, such as emblems, symbols, or words used by an individual to authenticate his writings or documents.

\$v **Self-portraits**

Use for reproductions or discussions of self-portraits by the artist or photographer.

Sepulchral monument, see –**Tomb**

\$v **Sermons** (H 2032)

Use as a form subdivision, particularly under divine persons or saints, for single sermons or collections of sermons about the person. *Servants*, see –**Employees**

\$x **Settings**

Use under literary authors for discussions of the settings of their works.

\$x **Sexual behavior**

\$x **Shrines** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for works discussing structures or places consecrated or devoted to the person and serving as places of religious veneration or pilgrimage.

See also –**Museums**; –**Relics**

Sketchbooks, see –**Notebooks, sketchbooks, etc.**

\$x **Slide collections** (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's collections of slides.

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

\$v Slides

Social views, see **–Political and social views**

\$x Societies, etc. (H 2060)

Use for works discussing organizations devoted to or specializing in the person's life or work.

\$v Songs and music (H 2075)

Use as a form subdivision for collections or single works of vocal or instrumental music about the person. For collections or single works in musical dramatic forms, such as operas, ballets, musical comedies, see **–Drama**.

\$x Songs and music \$x History and criticism (H 2075)

\$v Songs and music \$v Texts (H 2190)

\$v Sources (H 2080)

Use for collections of materials that served as the person's sources of ideas or inspiration for his endeavors or creative works and for discussions of those source materials. For collections or discussions of adaptations by others of an individual's creative works, see **–Adaptations**.

Spiritual life, see **–Religion**

\$x Spiritualistic interpretations

Use for works classed in BF1311.A-Z (Special topics, including names of individual persons)

\$v Spurious and doubtful works

Use for discussions or collections of works attributed to the person at some previous time. Do not use for a single work.

See also **–Authorship**

\$x Stage history (May Subd Geog)

Use under literary authors for historical aspects of dramatic production. For general works on stage presentation, see **–Dramatic production**. For performances of the works of composers, choreographers, and performing artists, see **–Performances**.

\$x Stamp collections (H 1427)

Use for works about the person's stamp collections. For works about the portrayal of the person on postage stamps, see **–On postage stamps**.

\$x Statues (May Subd Geog)

Use for works discussing or containing reproductions of statues representing the person.

Stories of operas, see **–Stories, plots, etc.**

\$v Stories, plots, etc.

Use under composers, choreographers, and literary authors for works summarizing or discussing the stories or plots of their works.

Style, Literary, see **–Literary art; –Literary style**

\$x Symbolism

Use for discussions of the symbols employed by the person in his creative works.

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons H 1110

Table-talk, see –**Quotations**

Tales, see –**Legends**; –**Romances**

\$x Teachings

Use for works discussing in general the body of knowledge, precepts, or doctrines the person taught to others.

\$x Technique

Use under literary authors for discussions of structural and formal elements in drama, fiction, and narrative poetry, such as asides, soliloquies, unities, scene structure, and stream-of-consciousness.

\$v Telephone calls

\$v Television adaptations

Textual criticism, see –**Criticism, Textual**

\$v Thematic catalogs (*H 1322, H 1438*)

Use under composers for lists of their musical compositions that include musical notation for the opening measures of individual works or sections of works.

\$x Themes, motives

Use for discussions of the themes and motives in the person's creative works. Assign an additional heading for an individual theme.

Theology, see –**Religion**

\$x Titles

Use for terms or phrases applied to the person as titles of address, titles of nobility, etc.

\$x Tomb

Use for works about the person's grave, interred bones, etc. For works on disinterred bones, see –**Relics**.

See also –**Death and burial**

\$x Tragedies

Use for criticism of tragedies by a literary author. Do not use under dramatists who write principally tragedies.

\$x Tragicomedies

Use for criticism of tragicomedies by a literary author. Do not use under dramatists who write principally tragicomedies.

\$v Translations (*H 2220*)

Use for collections of translations of a literary author. Do not use as a form heading for single translations.

\$x Translations \$x History and criticism

\$v Translations into French, [German, etc.]

\$x Translations into French, [German, etc.] \$x History and criticism

H 1110 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Persons

\$x **Travel** (*May Subd Geog*)

Use for works about voyages and travels undertaken by the person whether written by the persons or by others. When the subdivision is further subdivided by place, assign an additional heading of the type [*place*]-**Description and travel**.

See also –**Exile**

\$v **Trials, litigation, etc.** (*H 2228*)

Use for proceedings or discussions of proceedings of civil or criminal actions to which the person is a party.

\$x **Versification**

Use for discussions of a literary author's technique of writing verse, including the structural composition of poetry, rhythm, rhyme, alliteration, etc.

Video adaptations, see –**Film adaptations**

Views on [specific topic]

For works discussing the person's opinions or attitudes on a specific topic, whether explicitly stated or inferred, assign the heading for the person and an additional heading for the specific topic. For works on the person's knowledge of a specific topic, whether explicitly stated or inferred from his or her life and works, see –**Knowledge**-[*specific topic*].

Views on aesthetics, see –**Aesthetics**

Views on ethics, see –**Ethics**

Views on politics and society, see –**Political and social views**

Views on religion, see –**Religion**

Views on society, see –**Political and social views**

Voyages, see –**Travel**

Weblogs, see –**Blogs**

\$x **Will**

Use for discussions of the person's legal declaration regarding the disposition of his property or estate, including discussions or cases of contested wills.

See also –**Estate**

Writing skill, see –**Literary art**

\$x **Written works**

Use under persons active in the fine arts, music and performing arts for discussions, listings, etc., of their non-literary textual works. Do not use under persons also known as literary authors.

Youth, see –**Childhood and youth**

Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Families H 1120

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED: The subdivisions listed below may be used on a free-floating basis, as appropriate, under subject headings for individual families, dynasties, royal houses, etc., for example, **Smith family; Ptolemaic dynasty, 305-30 B.C.; Bourbon, House of; Normandy, Dukes of.**

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$v Anecdotes
- \$x Archaeological collections (H 1427)
- \$v Archives (H 1230)
- \$x Art collections (H 1427)
- \$x Art patronage
- \$x Bonsai collections (H 1427)
- \$v Caricatures and cartoons
- \$v Catalogs (H 1360)
- \$x Clothing
- \$x Coin collections (H 1427)
- \$v Correspondence (H 1480)
- \$v Diaries (H 1538)
- \$v Directories (H 1558)
- \$v Drama (H 1780)
- \$x Ethnological collections (H 1427)
- \$x Ethnomusicological collections (H 1427)
- \$v Fiction (H 1790)
- \$x Health
- \$x Herbarium (H 1427)
- \$x Homes and haunts (May Subd Geog)
- \$x In literature (H 362; H 1780; H 1790; H 1800)
- \$x In mass media
- \$x In motion pictures
- \$x Library (H 1427)
- \$v Literary collections
- \$x Manuscripts
- \$x Map collections (H 1427)
- \$x Monuments (May Subd Geog) (H 1916)
- \$x Museums (May Subd Geog) (H 1427)
- \$x Musical instrument collections (H 1427)

H 1120 Free-Floating Subdivisions: Names of Families

- \$x Natural history collections (H 1427)
- \$x Numismatic collections (H 1427)
- \$x Photograph collections (H 1427)
- \$v Pictorial works (H 1935)
- \$v Poetry (H 1800)
- \$x Political activity (*May Subd Geog*) (H 1942)
- \$v Portraits (H 1935)
- \$x Poster collections (H 1427)
- \$v Quotations (H 1969)
- \$v Registers (H 1558)
- \$x Relics (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Scientific apparatus collections (H 1427)
- \$x Slide collections (H 1427)
- \$x Societies, etc. (H 2060)
- \$x Stamp collections (H 1427)
- \$v Telephone calls
- \$x Tombs (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Trials, litigation, etc. (H 2228)

Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

PATTERN: *Fishes; Cattle*

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED BY THE PATTERN: Headings for individual animals and groups of animals at all taxonomic levels, established using either common or scientific names, including animals in their natural or wild state, and those raised or cared for by humans. The pattern also covers headings for extinct and fossil animals. *Examples:* **Aedes aegypti; Aquarium fishes; Bigeye tuna; Canada goose; Dinosaurs; Diptera; Dodo; Echinodermata, Fossil; Honeybee; Laboratory animals; Marine animals; Mollusks; Pets; Predatory animals; Sheep.** Included are individual breeds or groups of domestic animals, for example, **Tennessee walking horse; Poodles;** and headings for age and sex groups, for example, **Chicks; Foals; Cows.** The general headings **Animals; Domestic animals;** and **Livestock** are excluded. The category also does not include individually named animals such as **Seattle Slew (Race horse)** or **Morris (Cat).** The subdivisions below are also not used under phrase headings of the type **[animal] as laboratory animals** or **[animal] as pets.** Instead, these phrase headings are assigned along with headings of the type **[animal]–[appropriate subdivision from the list below].** Also excluded are headings for individual microorganisms. If a subdivision from this list is needed for use under a heading for an individual microorganism, it is established editorially rather than assigned as a free-floating subdivision. The category is represented by two pattern headings: **Fishes** and **Cattle.** Establish subdivisions appropriate for animals in general under **Fishes;** establish subdivisions specific to domestic animals under **Cattle.** Subdivisions having restricted use or needing explanation are explained in endnotes.

Note: In August 1993, the pattern heading list for domestic animals, H 1148, was discontinued. The subdivisions on that list were integrated into this list, and the scope of coverage of this list was expanded to include domestic animals.

CONFLICTS: Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to the category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

LC practice:

If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procedures in H 193.

H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$x Abnormalities¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Adaptation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Age (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Age determination (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Aging
- \$x Aging \$x Prevention
- \$x Anatomy
- \$x Artificial insemination (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Artificial spawning (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Autopsy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Behavior (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Behavior \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Behavior \$x Endocrine aspects
- \$x Behavior \$x Evolution (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Behavior \$x Genetic aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Biography
- \$x Biological control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Boning (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Breeding² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Breeding \$x Selection indexes
- \$x Cannibalism (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Carcasses (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Carcasses \$x Biodegradation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Carcasses \$x Grading (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Carcasses \$x Handling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cardiovascular system
- \$v Catalogs and collections (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Chemical defenses (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Classification
- \$x Classification \$x Molecular aspects
- \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cloning (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Collection and preservation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Collection and preservation \$x Law and legislation³ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Collection and preservation \$x Licenses (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Colonization (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Color (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

- \$x Composition
- \$x Condition scoring (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Conformation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Conservation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Conservation \$x Law and legislation³ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Control \$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Control \$x Law and legislation³ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cooperative marketing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Counting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cultural control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cytogenetics
- \$x Cytology
- \$x Defenses (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Detection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Development (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Development \$x Endocrine aspects
- \$x Digestive organs
- \$x Diseases⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases \$x Alternative treatment⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases \$x Chemotherapy⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases \$x Chiropractic treatment⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases \$x Diagnosis⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases \$x Diet therapy⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases \$x Epidemiology⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases \$x Genetic aspects⁴
- \$x Diseases \$x Homeopathic treatment⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases \$x Molecular aspects⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases \$x Nursing⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases \$x Nutritional aspects⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases \$x Prevention⁴
- \$x Diseases \$x Treatment⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Dispersal (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Dissection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Dormancy⁵ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Ecology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Ecophysiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of acid precipitation on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of aircraft on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of altitude on⁵ (*May Subd Geog*)

H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

\$x Effect of chemicals on⁶ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of cold on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of contaminated sediments on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of dams on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of dredging on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of drought on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of drugs on⁶ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of exotic animals on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of fires on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of fishing on⁵ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of floods on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of forest management on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of global warming on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of habitat modification on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of heavy metals on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of human beings on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of hunting on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of insecticides on⁶ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of light on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of logging on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of magnetism on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of metals on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of mining on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of music on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of noise on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of odors on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of off-road vehicles on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of oil spills on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of pesticides on⁶ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of poaching on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of predation on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of radioactive pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of roads on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of salt on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of sediments on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of selenium on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of sound on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of storms on (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

- \$x Effect of stray currents on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of stress on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of surface active agents on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of temperature on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of turbidity on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of ultraviolet radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of volcanic eruptions on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of water acidification on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of water currents on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of water levels on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of water pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of water quality on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Effect of wind power plants on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Eggs (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Eggs \$x Counting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Eggs \$x Dispersal (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Eggs \$x Geographical distribution
- \$x Eggs \$x Incubation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Embryology
- \$x Embryos (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Embryos \$x Anatomy
- \$x Embryos \$x Effect of ultraviolet radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Embryos \$x Motility
- \$x Embryos \$x Physiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Embryos \$x Transplantation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Endocrinology
- \$x Environmental enrichment (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Equipment and supplies
- \$x Evolution (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Exercise (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Exercise \$x Physiological aspects
- \$x Feed utilization efficiency (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Feeding and feeds⁷ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Feeding and feeds \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Feeding and feeds \$x Contamination (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Feeding and feeds \$v Recipes
- \$x Fertility (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Fetuses
- \$x Fetuses \$x Anatomy
- \$x Fetuses \$x Physiology (*May Subd Geog*)

H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

- \$x Flight⁵ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Fluorescence⁵ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Food⁸ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Fractures¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Generative organs
- \$x Genetic engineering (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Genetics
- \$x Genome mapping (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Geographical distribution
- \$x Geographical distribution \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Germplasm resources (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Germplasm resources \$x Cryopreservation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Germplasm resources \$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Grading (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Grooming⁹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Growth
- \$x Habitat (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Habitat \$x Conservation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Habitat suitability index models (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Habitations¹⁰ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Handling¹¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Health (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Hibernation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Histology
- \$x Histopathology
- \$x Home range (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Homing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Host plants (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Housing¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Housing \$x Air conditioning¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Housing \$x Decoration¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Housing \$x Design and construction¹²
- \$x Housing \$x Disinfection¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Housing \$x Environmental engineering¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Housing \$x Heating and ventilation¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Housing \$x Insulation¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Housing \$x Lighting¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Housing \$x Odor control¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Housing \$x Safety measures¹²
- \$x Housing \$x Sanitation¹² (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

\$x Housing \$v Specifications¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Housing \$x Waste disposal¹² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Hybridization (*May Subd Geog*)
\$v Identification
\$x Immunology
\$x Immunology \$x Genetic aspects
\$x Induced spawning (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Infancy (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Infections¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Infertility (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Inspection (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Integrated control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Judging (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae \$x Dispersal (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae \$x Ecology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae \$x Effect of ultraviolet radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae \$x Endocrinology
\$x Larvae \$x Food (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Larvae \$x Geographical distribution
\$x Larvae \$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Law and legislation³ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Life cycles (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Locomotion (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Longevity (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Losses (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Manure (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Manure \$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Manure \$x Handling (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Marketing
\$x Marketing \$x Law and legislation³ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Marking¹³ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Mercury content (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Metabolism
\$x Metabolism \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Metamorphosis⁵ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Metamorphosis \$x Endocrine aspects⁵
\$x Metamorphosis \$x Genetic aspects⁵
\$x Metamorphosis \$x Molecular aspects⁵
\$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)

H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

- \$x Migration (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Migration \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Migration \$x Endocrine aspects
- \$x Molecular aspects
- \$x Molecular genetics
- \$x Monitoring (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Morphogenesis (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Morphology
- \$x Mortality (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Names¹⁴
- \$x Nervous system
- \$x Nests (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Nests \$x Abandonment (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Nests \$x Counting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Nomenclature¹⁵
- \$v Nomenclature (Popular)¹⁶
- \$v Nomenclature (Popular) \$x French, [Italian, etc.]¹⁶
- \$x Nutrition (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Nutrition \$x Requirements (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Odor (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Orientation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Origin
- \$x Parasites (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Parasites \$x Biological control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Parasites \$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Parasites \$x Control \$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Parasites \$v Identification
- \$x Parasites \$x Life cycles (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Parasites \$x Molecular aspects
- \$x Parturition (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Pathogens (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Pedigrees
- \$v Performance records
- \$x Photographic identification (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Phylogeny
- \$x Phylogeny \$x Molecular aspects
- \$x Physiological genomics
- \$x Physiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Population viability analysis (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Predators of (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

- \$x Predators of \$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Predators of \$x Ecology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Pregnancy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Processing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Productivity (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Psychic aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Psychological aspects¹⁷
- \$x Psychological testing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Psychology¹⁸
- \$x Purchasing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Quality (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Quarantine (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Racial analysis (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radio tracking (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radioactive contamination (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Recolonization (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reintroduction (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Religious aspects
- \$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
- \$x Reproduction¹⁹
- \$x Reproduction \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reproduction \$x Effect of altitude on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reproduction \$x Effect of light on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reproduction \$x Effect of temperature on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Reproduction \$x Endocrine aspects
- \$x Reproduction \$x Regulation
- \$x Respiration (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Respiratory organs
- \$x Schooling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seasonal distribution (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seasonal variations (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Selection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Sense organs
- \$x Services for (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Sexing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Sexual behavior (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Showing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Size (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Spawning (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Speciation (*May Subd Geog*)

H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

- \$x Speed
- \$x Spermatzoa
- \$x Spermatzoa \$x Abnormalities (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Spermatzoa \$x Morphology
- \$x Spermatzoa \$x Motility
- \$x Stranding (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Summering (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery \$x Complications (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Surgery \$x Nursing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Symbolic aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Technological innovations (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Territoriality (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Testing
- \$x Therapeutic use (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Toxicology²⁰ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Training (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transportation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Trypanotolerance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Type specimens (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Utilization (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Vaccination (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Variation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Venom²⁰ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Venom resistance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Vertical distribution (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Virus diseases¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Viruses (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Vocalization⁵ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Vocalization \$x Regulation⁵
- \$x Water requirements (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Weight
- \$x Wintering (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Wounds and injuries¹ (*May Subd Geog*)

NOTES

¹Subdivisions on this list that represent specific pathological conditions, for example, –**Abnormalities**, –**Fractures**; –**Infections**; –**Virus diseases**; –**Wounds and injuries**, may be further subdivided by subdivisions listed under the subdivision –**Diseases**, for example, –**Diseases–Diagnosis**; **Diseases–Treatment**.

Pattern Headings: Animals H 1147

²Use **–Breeding** for the controlled mating and selection of animals by humans, usually for the purpose of improving the species or breed. Use **–Reproduction** for the physiological process by which animals generate offspring of the same kind.

³See H 1154.5 for further subdivisions used under legal topics.

⁴Subdivisions listed under **–Diseases** may also be used under subdivisions on this list that represent specific pathological conditions, for example, **–Infections–Diagnosis**; **–Fractures–Treatment**.

⁵Not established under **Fishes**. Use under individual animals and groups of animals as appropriate.

⁶Assign additional headings of the type [*individual chemical*]**–Physiological effect** for individual chemicals, drugs, insecticides, pesticides, etc.

⁷Use **–Feeding and feeds** for the nutritional preparations provided for animals by humans as well as for the process of providing nourishment to them. Use **–Food** for the nutritional substances that animals find on their own or provide for themselves as well as for their food habits.

⁸Use **–Food** for the nutritional substances animals find on their own or provide for themselves as well as for their food habits. Use **–Feeding and feeds** for the nutritional preparations provided for animals by humans as well as for the process of providing nourishment to them.

⁹Use **–Grooming** for the human tending, cleaning, brushing, etc., of animals.

¹⁰Use **–Habitations** for the natural shelters and homes that animals build for themselves, such as burrows, dens, lairs, lodges, etc. Use **–Nests** under nesting animals. Use **–Housing** for the shelters and structures that humans construct and provide for wild or domestic animals.

¹¹Not established under **Fishes**; use **Fish handling** instead. Use **–Handling** under other individual animals and groups of animals as appropriate.

¹²Use **–Housing** for the shelters and structures that humans construct and provide for wild or domestic animals. Use **–Habitations** for the natural shelters and homes that animals build for themselves.

¹³Not established under **Fishes**. Use **Fish tagging** instead. Use under individual animals and groups of animals as appropriate.

¹⁴Use **–Names** for the history, origin, customs, etc., of selecting personal names for individual animals.

¹⁵Use **–Nomenclature** for systematically derived lists of names or designations that have been formally adopted or sanctioned, or for discussions of the principles involved in the creation or application of those names to taxonomic groupings of animals.

¹⁶Use **–Nomenclature (Popular)** for lists or discussions of common names for animal groupings.

¹⁷Use **–Psychological aspects** for the influence of animals on the human mental condition or personality.

H 1147 Pattern Headings: Animals

¹⁸Use **–Psychology** for the mental processes or characteristics of animals.

¹⁹Use **–Reproduction** for the physiological process by which animals generate offspring of the same kind. Use **–Breeding** for the controlled mating and selection of animals by humans, usually for the purpose of improving the species or breed.

²⁰Not established under **Fishes**. Established instead under **Poisonous fishes**. Use under individual animals and groups of animals as appropriate.

Pattern Headings: Industries H 1153

\$x Insurance \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$v Inventories⁵
\$x Inventory control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Job vacancies (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Labor productivity (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Licenses (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Licenses \$x Fees (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Location (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Management
\$x Management \$x Employee participation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Management \$x Employee participation \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Materials management (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Mergers (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Military aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Noise
\$x Ownership (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Personnel management
\$x Planning
\$x Political activity (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Power supply (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Prices⁶ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Prices \$x Government policy⁶ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Prices \$x Law and legislation^{1,6} (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Privatization (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Production control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Production standards (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Quality control
\$v Records and correspondence
\$x Risk management (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Safety measures
\$x Safety regulations¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Sanitation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seasonal variations (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Security measures (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Self-regulation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Social aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
\$v Specifications⁷ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Standards (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x State supervision (*May Subd Geog*)

H 1153 Pattern Headings: Industries

\$x Statistical methods
\$x Statistical services
\$x Subcontracting (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Subsidies (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Technological innovations (*May Subd Geog*)
\$v Telephone directories
\$v Trademarks
\$x Vertical integration (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Vocational guidance (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Waste disposal (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Waste minimization (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Water-supply

NOTES

¹See H 1154.5 for further subdivisions used under legal topics.

²See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

³Not valid under **Construction industry**.

⁴Not established under **Construction industry** or **Retail trade**. Use under other industries as appropriate for estimates of the cost of construction, installation, etc., or the carrying out of a task to completion, for example, **Aerospace industries—Estimates**.

⁵Not valid under **Retail trade**.

⁶Not valid under **Retail trade**. Use the subdivision **—Prices** under headings for products, merchandise, etc. Use under the heading for an industry only when one general heading for the products of that industry is lacking.

⁷Use under an industry only in those cases where discussion of specifications is not limited to a single product of the industry. Use under headings for products, merchandise, etc., for specifications of single products, etc.

Pattern Headings: Languages H 1154

- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for social workers)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for soldiers, etc.)
- \$v Conversation and phrase books (for tourism industry employees)
- \$x Coordinate constructions
- \$x Declension
- \$x Definiteness
- \$x Deixis
- \$x Deletion
- \$x Demonstratives
- \$x Dependency grammar
- \$x Determiners
- \$x Diacritics¹
- \$x Dialectology
- \$x Dialects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Dialects \$v Conversation and phrase books
- \$x Dialects \$v Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.
- \$x Dialects \$x Grammar
- \$x Dialects \$x Lexicology
- \$x Dialects \$x Morphology
- \$x Dialects \$x Mutual intelligibility
- \$x Dialects \$x Phonetics
- \$x Dialects \$x Phonology
- \$x Dialects \$x Research (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Dialects \$x Research \$x Law and legislation⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Dialects \$x Syntax
- \$x Dialects \$v Texts
- \$x Diction
- \$v Dictionaries⁵
- \$v Dictionaries \$v Early works to 1700
- \$v Dictionaries \$x French, [Italian, etc.]
- \$v Dictionaries \$x Polyglot
- \$v Dictionaries, Juvenile⁵
- \$v Dictionaries, Juvenile \$x Hebrew, [Italian, etc.]
- \$x Diminutives
- \$x Diphthongs
- \$x Direct object
- \$x Discourse analysis
- \$x Dissimilation
- \$x Elision
- \$x Ellipsis

H 1154 Pattern Headings: Languages

- \$x Emphasis
- \$x Enclitics
- \$x Epithets¹
- \$x Eponyms
- \$x Ergative constructions
- \$x Errors of usage
- \$x Etymology
- \$x Etymology \$x Names
- \$x Euphemism
- \$x Exclamations
- \$v Exercises for dictation
- \$x Existential constructions
- \$x Figures of speech¹
- \$v Films for foreign speakers
- \$v Films for French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$z Foreign countries
- \$x Foreign elements
- \$x Foreign elements \$x French, [Greek, Latin, etc.]
- \$x Foreign words and phrases
- \$x Foreign words and phrases \$x Arabic, [Italian, etc.]
- \$x Function words
- \$x Gallicisms
- \$x Gemination
- \$x Gender
- \$x Gerund
- \$x Gerundive
- \$x Globalization
- \$v Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.⁵
- \$v Glossaries, vocabularies, etc. \$x Polyglot
- \$x Government
- \$x Government jargon
- \$x Gradation
- \$x Grammar
- \$x Grammar \$x Theory, etc.
- \$x Grammar, Comparative
- \$x Grammar, Comparative \$x French, [Latin, etc.]
- \$x Grammar, Generative
- \$x Grammar, Historical
- \$x Grammatical categories
- \$x Grammaticalization

Pattern Headings: Languages H 1154

- \$x Graphemics
- \$x Haplogy
- \$x Heteronyms
- \$x Hiatus
- \$x History⁶
- \$x Homonyms
- \$x Honorific
- \$x Ideophone
- \$x Idioms
- \$x Imperative
- \$x Indeclinable words
- \$x Indicative
- \$x Indirect discourse
- \$x Indirect object
- \$x Infinitival constructions
- \$x Infinitive
- \$x Infixes
- \$x Inflection
- \$x Influence on foreign languages
- \$x Influence on French, [Italian, etc.]
- \$x Intensification
- \$x Interjections
- \$x Interrogative
- \$x Intonation
- \$x Jargon
- \$x Labiality
- \$x Lexicography
- \$x Lexicology¹
- \$x Lexicology, Historical¹
- \$x Locative constructions
- \$x Machine translating (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Markedness
- \$x Medical English²
- \$x Metonyms
- \$x Metrics and rhythmic⁷
- \$x Mimetic words
- \$x Modality
- \$x Monosyllables
- \$x Mood
- \$x Morphemics

H 1154 Pattern Headings: Languages

- \$x Morphology
- \$x Morphophonemics
- \$x Morphosyntax
- \$x Mutation
- \$x Mutual intelligibility³
- \$x Nasality
- \$x Negatives
- \$x Neutralization
- \$x New words
- \$x Nominals
- \$x Noun
- \$x Noun phrase
- \$x Number
- \$x Numerals
- \$x Obscene words
- \$x Obsolete words
- \$x Onomatopoeic words
- \$x Orthography and spelling
- \$x Palatalization
- \$x Paragraphs
- \$x Parallelism
- \$x Paraphrase
- \$x Parenthetical constructions
- \$x Paronyms
- \$x Parsing
- \$x Participle
- \$x Particles
- \$x Partitives
- \$x Parts of speech
- \$x Passive voice
- \$x Pejoration
- \$x Person
- \$x Phonemics
- \$v Phonetic transcriptions
- \$x Phonetics
- \$x Phonology
- \$x Phonology, Comparative
- \$x Phonology, Comparative \$x French, [German, etc.]
- \$x Phonology, Historical
- \$x Phraseology

Pattern Headings: Languages H 1154

- \$x Polysemy
- \$x Possessives
- \$x Postpositions
- \$x Prepositional phrases
- \$x Prepositions
- \$x Pronominals
- \$x Pronoun
- \$x Pronunciation
- \$x Pronunciation by foreign speakers
- \$x Prosodic analysis
- \$x Provincialisms (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Punctuation
- \$x Quantifiers
- \$x Quantity
- \$v Readers¹
- \$v Readers \$v [form]¹
- \$v Readers \$x [topic]¹
- \$v Readers for new literates¹
- \$x Reduplication
- \$x Reference
- \$x Reflexives
- \$x Reform
- \$x Relational grammar
- \$x Relative clauses
- \$x Religious aspects
- \$x Religious aspects \$x Baptists, [Catholic Church, etc.]
- \$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
- \$x Remedial teaching (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Resultative constructions
- \$v Reverse indexes⁵
- \$x Revival
- \$x Rhetoric
- \$x Rhyme
- \$x Rhythm⁸
- \$x Roots
- \$v Self-instruction
- \$x Semantics
- \$x Semantics, Historical
- \$x Sentences
- \$x Sex differences (*May Subd Geog*)

H 1154 Pattern Headings: Languages

- \$x Slang
- \$x Social aspects⁹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Sonorants
- \$v Sound recordings for foreign speakers
- \$v Sound recordings for French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$x Spectral analysis
- \$x Spoken English (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Spoken French, [Japanese, etc.]¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Standardization
- \$x Study and teaching (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Study and teaching \$x African American students
- \$x Study and teaching \$x Bilingual method
- \$x Study and teaching \$x Foreign speakers
- \$x Study and teaching \$x Foreign speakers \$x Audio-visual aids
- \$x Study and teaching \$x French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$x Study and teaching \$x Immersion method
- \$x Study and teaching (Continuing education) (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Study and teaching (Continuing education) \$x Foreign speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Continuing education) \$x French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Early childhood) (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Study and teaching (Early childhood) \$x Foreign speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Early childhood) \$x French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Elementary) (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Study and teaching (Elementary) \$x Foreign speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Elementary) \$x French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Higher) (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Study and teaching (Higher) \$x Foreign speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Higher) \$x French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Preschool) (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Study and teaching (Preschool) \$x Foreign speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Preschool) \$x French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Primary) (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Study and teaching (Primary) \$x Foreign speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Primary) \$x French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Secondary) (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Study and teaching (Secondary) \$x Foreign speakers
- \$x Study and teaching (Secondary) \$x French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers
- \$x Style
- \$x Subjectless constructions
- \$x Subjunctive

Pattern Headings: Languages H 1154

- \$x Subordinate constructions
- \$x Substitution
- \$x Suffixes and prefixes
- \$x Suppletion
- \$x Switch-reference
- \$x Syllabication
- \$x Synonyms and antonyms
- \$x Syntax
- \$x Technical English²
- \$x Technical English \$x Translating into French, [German, etc.]
- \$x Tempo
- \$x Temporal clauses
- \$x Temporal constructions
- \$x Tense
- \$v Terms and phrases⁵
- \$v Textbooks
- \$v Textbooks for English, [French, etc.] speakers¹⁰
- \$v Textbooks for foreign speakers
- \$v Textbooks for foreign speakers \$x English¹
- \$v Textbooks for foreign speakers \$x German, [Italian, etc.]
- \$v Texts¹¹
- \$x Texts \$x Dating¹¹
- \$x Topic and comment
- \$x Transcription (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Transitivity
- \$x Translating (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Translating into French, [German, etc.]
- \$x Transliteration
- \$x Transliteration into Korean, [Russian, etc.]
- \$x Transmutation
- \$x Usage
- \$x Variation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Verb
- \$x Verb phrase
- \$x Verbals
- \$x Versification⁸
- Video recordings for foreign speakers, see --**Films for foreign speakers**
- Video recordings for French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers, see --**Films for French, [Spanish, etc.] speakers**
- \$x Vocabulary¹

H 1154 Pattern Headings: Languages

- \$x Vocalization¹²
- \$x Vocational guidance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Voice
- \$x Vowel gradation
- \$x Vowel reduction
- \$x Vowels¹³
- \$x Word formation
- \$x Word frequency
- \$x Word order
- \$x Writing
- \$x Written English² (*May Subd Geog*)

NOTES

¹Use only under languages other than English.

²Not a free-floating subdivision. Establish headings for [...] **language–Business** [...]; [...] **language–Medical** [...]; [...] **language–Technical** [...]; and [...] **language–Written** [...] as needed.

³Use only under groups of languages.

⁴See H 1154.5 for further subdivisions used under legal topics.

⁵The subdivisions **–Dictionaries**, **–Dictionaries, Juvenile**, and **–Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.** may also be used under any valid topical subdivision, as appropriate (except **–Reverse indexes** and **–Terms and phrases**), for lists of words pertaining to that topic, for example, **English language–Usage–Dictionaries**; **English language–Orthography and spelling–Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.**; **English language–Synonyms and antonyms–Dictionaries, Juvenile**. Only a few examples are printed in this list for reference.

⁶Do not further subdivide by period subdivisions.

⁷Use only under ancient languages instead of **–Rhythm** and **–Versification**, for example, **Greek language–Metrics and rhythmic**s.

⁸Under ancient languages use **–Metrics and rhythmic**s instead, for example, **Greek language–Metrics and rhythmic**s.

⁹Do not use under **[place]–Languages**. Use **Sociolinguistics–[place]** instead.

¹⁰Use only under artificial languages, for example, **Esperanto–Textbooks for Spanish speakers**.

¹¹Use according to instructions in H 2190 only under lesser-known languages, for example, **Hittite language–Texts**; under **[ethnic group]–Languages**, **[groups of Indians]–Languages** and **[place]–Languages**; or under early periods of languages (ca. pre-1500), for example, **English language–Middle English–1100-1500–Texts**.

Pattern Headings: Languages H 1154

¹²Use only under Semitic languages instead of –**Vowels**, for example, **Hebrew language–Vocalization**.

¹³Under Semitic languages use –**Vocalization** instead, for example, **Hebrew language–Vocalization**.

Pattern Headings: Groups of Literary Authors H 1155.2

PATTERN: Authors, English

TYPES OF HEADING COVERED BY THE PATTERN: Headings for groups of literary authors, including groups established with adjectival qualifiers. *Examples:* **Authors; Dramatists; Novelists; Poets; African American authors; Dramatists, French; Women novelists; Blind poets.** The category does not include names of individual literary authors, which are covered by H 1110. The category also does not include headings of the type [. . .] **literature**–[. . .] **authors.** These headings represent subordinate bodies of literature written by those author groups (cf. H 1156).

*Note: Groups of literary authors are established with adjectival qualifiers to express nationality, ethnicity, publication language, or geographic location and are authorized for geographic subdivision. Therefore, it is not necessary to subdivide geographically the general headings for groups of literary authors, such as **Authors; Novelists; Women poets; Men authors.***

RELATION TO H 1100: Subdivisions on the list of free-floating subdivisions used under classes of persons, H 1100, may also be used under headings for groups of literary authors where there is no conflict. This list contains the additional subdivisions that are specific to literary authors.

CONFLICTS: Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to the category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

LC practice:

If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procedures in H 193.

NEW SUBDIVISIONS: Establish new subdivisions under **Authors, English**, if possible. If the subdivision would not be appropriate under the pattern heading, establish it under the heading appropriate for the work cataloged. Individual proposals may be necessary for period subdivisions before the 18th century when the English pattern cannot be followed.

H 1155.2 Pattern Headings: Groups of Literary Authors

PERIOD SUBDIVISIONS:

Note: Do not use period subdivisions under headings for groups of literary authors with geographic subdivisions.

- \$y Old English, ca. 450-1100
- \$y Middle English, 1100-1500
- \$y Early modern, 1500-1700
- \$y 18th century
- \$y 19th century
- \$y 20th century
- \$y 21st century

TOPICAL AND FORM SUBDIVISIONS:

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

*The subdivisions below, as well as appropriate subdivisions from H 1100, may also be used under headings of the type **Authors, [. . .]--[period subdivision]**.*

- \$x Aesthetics
- \$v Chronology
- \$x Philosophy
- \$x Political activity (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Political and social views
- \$x Relations with men
- \$x Relations with women

Pattern Headings: Literary Works Entered Under Title H 1155.8

PATTERN: Beowulf

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED BY THE PATTERN: Headings for literary works entered directly under uniform title, including anonymous and multi-authored works. *Examples:* **Arabian nights; Chanson de Roland; Gawain and the Grene Knight; Pearl (Middle English poem)**. The subject cataloging of anonymous sacred classics, for example, **Bible; Koran; Vedas**, differs substantially and should not be confused with the treatment of the literary works discussed here. For free-floating subdivisions used under the uniform titles of sacred works, see H 1188. For subdivisions used under literary works entered under author, see H 1155.6.

CONFLICTS: Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to the category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

LC practice:

If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procedures in H 193.

SPECIAL PROVISIONS: The subdivisions listed in H 1095 as authorized for use under subjects in general, for example, –**Bibliography** or –**Exhibitions**, or under individual works (author-title or title entries), for example, –**Concordances** or –**Sources**, are also free-floating under literary works. The additional subdivisions listed below follow the usage given in the individual literary authors list (H 1110). Do not use the subdivision –**Criticism and interpretation** under entries for literary works. For a work of *general criticism and interpretation* or a discussion combining the approaches of several subdivisions, assign as a subject heading the uniform title of the literary work *without* subdivision.

H 1155.8 Pattern Headings: Literary Works Entered Under Title

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$v Adaptations
- \$x Appreciation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Authorship
- \$x Characters
- \$x Criticism, Textual
- \$x Dramatic production
- \$v Film adaptations
 - Film and video adaptations, see --Film adaptations*
- \$v Illustrations
- \$x Influence
- \$x Language
- \$x Language \$v Glossaries, etc.
- \$x Manuscripts
- \$v Manuscripts \$v Facsimiles
- \$v Parodies, imitations, etc.
- \$x Style
- \$v Television adaptations
- \$v Translations
- \$x Translations \$x History and criticism
- \$v Translations into French, [German, etc.]
- \$x Translations into French, [German, etc.] \$x History and criticism
- \$x Versification

Pattern Headings: Literatures H 1156

PATTERN: English literature

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED BY THE PATTERN: The following is a three section list of the free-floating subdivisions used under headings for individual literatures and genres of those literatures, such as **Swedish literature; French drama; German essays; Epic poetry, Finnish; Short stories, Chinese**, with the restrictions noted in each section. Appropriate subdivisions may also be used under headings formed using the free-floating subdivision –**Literatures** under names of regions and countries, for example, **America–Literatures**. The category does not include the general heading **Literature**, general headings for genres without adjectival qualifiers, such as **Drama** or **Poetry**, nor non-bellestristic genres such as **Scientific literature**.

Period subdivisions are listed first, author groups second, and topical and form subdivisions last in order to suggest the proper order for considering these elements in the formulation of literature subject headings.

*Note: Headings for individual literatures and literary genres that are established with qualifiers for nationality or language may be subdivided geographically to indicate a more specific origin: **American literature–Southern States; English poetry–Ireland; Short stories, Chinese–Taiwan**. Headings for literary genres with geographic subdivisions may be further subdivided by topical and form subdivisions from sec. III. Period and author group subdivisions from sec. I and sec. II may not be combined in a single heading with geographic subdivisions. Instead, assign additional headings to bring out those aspects.*

CONFLICTS: Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to the category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

LC practice:

If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procedures in H 193.

H 1156 Pattern Headings: Literatures

I. PERIOD SUBDIVISIONS:

Period subdivisions may be followed by topical and form subdivisions from sec. III, with the noted exceptions, but may not be combined with author group subdivisions from sec. II, nor used after headings for literatures or literary genres with geographic subdivision. Period subdivisions are used only after headings for individual literatures or major literary genres, that is, headings in the form [. . .] **literature**, [. . .] **fiction**, [. . .] **drama**, [. . .] **poetry**, [. . .] **essays**, or [. . .] **prose literature**. In addition, period subdivisions are not used under headings modified by parenthetical qualifiers for language, for example, **Nigerian fiction (English)**.

The listed period subdivisions evolved from English literature practice and should be used only when appropriate for other literatures. If they are inappropriate for specific literatures, special periods should be established where needed under individual literatures and genres.

Literatures and genres, except drama:

- \$y Old English, ca. 450-1100
- \$y Middle English, 1100-1500
- \$y Early modern, 1500-1700
- \$y 18th century
- \$y 19th century
- \$y 20th century
- \$y 21st century

Drama:

- \$y To 1500
- \$y Early modern and Elizabethan, 1500-1600
- \$y 17th century
- \$y Restoration, 1660-1700
- \$y 18th century
- \$y 19th century
- \$y 20th century
- \$y 21st century

II. AUTHOR GROUP SUBDIVISIONS:

Use the following free-floating subdivisions under any literature or major genre of a literature for author groups that identify subordinate bodies of that literature. Any subdivision that also designates the literature is not valid under that literature, for example, use **English literature–Celtic authors**, but *not* **Celtic literature–Celtic authors**. Author group subdivisions may be followed by any topical or form subdivision from sec. III, but may not be combined in a single heading with period subdivisions from sec. I nor used after headings for literary genres with geographic subdivisions.

Following this pattern, establish new subdivisions for internal *national*, *ethnic*, or *religious* groups *only*. For other author groups, follow the pattern of the phrase headings, **Children's writings, English–[place]** or **Prisoners' writings, French–[place]**. However, for external author groups, that is, those living outside the country normally associated with the literature to which they are contributing, use simple geographic subdivision, for example, **German literature–Romania**.

The literatures of the independent nations of Africa, Asia, and the Pacific must be established with the national or regional group as an independent literature (using a parenthetical language qualifier if necessary), for example, **African literature (French)**. Since these are no longer considered subordinate groups within the general body of literature in a language, do not formulate headings such as **French literature–African authors**.

- \$x Algerian authors
- \$x Arab authors
- \$x Armenian authors
- \$x Asian authors
- \$x Bangladeshi authors
- \$x Basque authors
- \$x Bengali authors
- \$x Black authors¹
- \$x Buddhist authors
- \$x Caribbean authors
- \$x Catalan authors
- \$x Catholic authors
- \$x Celtic authors
- \$x Chinese authors
- \$x Christian authors
- \$x Christian Science authors
- \$x Dalit authors
- \$x Dravidian authors

H 1156 Pattern Headings: Literatures

II. AUTHOR GROUP SUBDIVISIONS: (Continued)

- \$x Druze authors
- \$x East Indian authors
- \$x European authors
- \$x Foreign authors
- \$x German authors
- \$x Greek authors
- \$x Hindu authors
- \$x Irish authors
- \$x Italian authors
- \$x Jaina authors
- \$x Japanese authors
- \$x Jewish authors
- \$x Jewish Christian authors
- \$x Korean authors
- \$x Kurdish authors
- \$x Kyrgyz authors
- \$x Lutheran authors
- \$x Luxembourg authors
- \$x Male authors
- \$x Maori authors
- \$x Maratha authors
- \$x Mennonite authors
- \$x Methodist authors
- \$x Minority authors
- \$x Mongolian authors
- \$x Mormon authors
- \$x Muslim authors
- \$x Orthodox Eastern authors
- \$x Parsee authors
- \$x Persian authors
- \$x Polish authors
- \$x Protestant authors
- \$x Puritan authors
- \$x Quaker authors
- \$x Scottish authors
- \$x Sindhi authors
- \$x South Asian authors
- \$x Swami-Narayani authors

Pattern Headings: Literatures H 1156

II. AUTHOR GROUP SUBDIVISIONS: (Continued)

- \$x Turkic authors
- \$x Turkish authors
- \$x Ukrainian authors
- \$x Welsh authors
- \$x White authors
- \$x Women authors
- \$x Yoruba authors

III. TOPICAL AND FORM SUBDIVISIONS:

The following free-floating subdivisions may also be used under period subdivisions from sec. I, or author group subdivisions from sec. II with the noted exceptions. They may also be used after headings for literary genres with geographic subdivisions.

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$v Adaptations
- \$x African influences²
- \$x American influences²
- \$x Appreciation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Arab influences²
- \$x Asian influences²
- \$v Audio adaptations
- \$x Australian influences²
- \$v Bibliography
- \$x Brazilian influences²
- \$x Buddhist influences²
- \$x Celtic influences²
- \$x Censorship (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Chinese influences²
- \$x Christian influences²
- \$v Chronology
- \$x Classical influences²
- \$v Concordances
- \$x Confucian influences²
- \$x Criticism, Textual
- \$x Czech influences²

H 1156 Pattern Headings: Literatures

III. TOPICAL AND FORM SUBDIVISIONS: (Continued)

- \$x Egyptian influences²
- \$x English influences³
- \$x European influences²
- \$x Explication
- \$v Film adaptations
 - Film and video adaptations*, see --**Film adaptations**
- \$x Finnish influences²
- \$x First editions
- \$x First editions \$v Bibliography
- \$z Foreign countries⁴
- \$z Foreign countries \$x History and criticism⁴
- \$x Foreign influences²
- \$x French influences²
- \$x Galician influences²
- \$x German influences²
- \$x Greek influences²
- \$x Hebrew influences²
- \$x History and criticism
- \$x History and criticism \$x Theory, etc.
- \$x Hungarian influences²
- \$v Illustrations
- \$x Indian influences²
- \$x Indic influences²
- \$x Iranian influences²
- \$x Irish influences²
- \$x Islamic influences²
- \$x Italian influences²
- \$x Japanese influences²
- \$x Latin American influences²
- \$x Manuscripts
- \$x Mayan influences²
- \$x Medieval influences
- \$x Mediterranean influences²
- \$x Memorizing
- \$x Mexican influences²
- \$x Minangkabau influences²
- \$v Musical settings
- \$x Musical settings \$x History and criticism

III. TOPICAL AND FORM SUBDIVISIONS: *(Continued)*

- \$x Mycenaean influences²
- \$x Northern Thai influences²
- \$x Old Norse influences²
- \$x Periodization
- \$x Persian influences²
- \$x Polish influences²
- \$x Portuguese influences²
- \$x Provençal influences²
- \$x Publishing *(May Subd Geog)*
- \$x Roman influences²
- \$x Romanian influences²
- \$x Russian influences²
- \$x Sanskrit influences²
- \$x Scandinavian influences²
- \$x Scottish influences²
- \$x Shamanistic influences
- \$x Slavic influences²
- \$x Slovak influences²
- \$x Sources
- \$x Soviet influences²
- \$x Spanish influences²
- \$v Stories, plots, etc.
- \$x Taoist influences²
- \$v Television adaptations
- \$x Thai influences²
- \$x Themes, motives
- \$v Translations
- \$x Translations \$x History and criticism
- \$v Translations into French, [German, etc.]
- \$x Translations into French, [German, etc.] \$x History and criticism
- \$x Turkic influences²
- \$x Ukrainian influences²
- \$x Urdu influences²
- \$x West Indian influences²
- \$x Western influences²
- \$x Yiddish influences²

H 1156 Pattern Headings: Literatures

NOTES

¹Not valid under headings for American literature or its genres.

²Not valid under period subdivisions or under headings for literatures identified in the subdivision.

³Not established under **English literature**. Use under other literatures as appropriate. Not valid under period subdivisions.

⁴Not valid under subdivisions for periods, groups of authors, or places.

Pattern Headings: Military Services H 1159

- \$x Optical instrument repairers¹
- \$v Order-books
- \$x Ordnance and ordnance stores
- \$x Ordnance and ordnance stores \$x Effect of environment on (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Ordnance and ordnance stores \$x Quality control
- \$x Ordnance facilities
- \$x Organization
- \$x Painting of vessels
- \$x Parachute troops
- \$x Pay, allowances, etc.
- \$x Pay, allowances, etc. \$x Law and legislation¹⁰
- \$x Personnel management
- \$x Personnel management \$x Law and legislation¹⁰
- \$x Personnel records
- \$x Petty officers¹
- \$v Petty officers' handbooks
- \$x Photographers¹
- \$x Physical training (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Political activity (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Political-military affairs officers¹
- \$x Postal clerks¹
- \$x Postal service
- \$x Prisons
- \$x Procurement
- \$x Promotions
- \$x Provisioning¹⁷
- \$x Public relations (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Radio installations
- \$x Radiomen¹
- \$v Records and correspondence
- \$x Recruiting, enlistment, etc.
- \$x Recruiting, enlistment, etc. \$y Revolution, 1775-1783, [Spanish-American War, 1898, etc.]¹⁸
- \$x Recruiting, enlistment, etc. \$x Law and legislation¹⁰
- \$v Registers
- \$v Registers of dead
- \$v Regulations
- \$x Religious life
- \$x Remount service
- \$x Reorganization

H 1159 Pattern Headings: Military Services

- \$x Reserve fleets
- \$x Reserves
- \$x Reserves \$x Pay, allowances, etc.
- \$x Reserves \$x Personnel records
- \$x Reserves \$x Promotions
- \$x Robots
- \$x Rum ration
- \$x Safety measures
- \$v Sailors' handbooks
- \$x Sanitary affairs
- \$x Sea life
- \$x Search and rescue operations (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Security measures
- \$x Service clubs
- \$x Service craft
- \$x Shore patrol¹⁹
- \$x Ski troops
- \$x Small-boat service
- \$x Social services²⁰
- \$v Songs and music
- \$x Songs and music \$x History and criticism
- \$v Songs and music \$v Texts
- \$x Sports
- \$x Stability operations
- \$x Staff corps
- \$x Staffs¹
- \$x Stewards¹
- \$x Storekeepers¹
- \$x Submarine forces
- \$x Supplies and stores
- \$x Supplies and stores \$x Law and legislation¹⁰
- \$x Supplies and stores \$x Quality control
- \$x Surgeons¹
- \$x Surgeons \$x Malpractice
- \$x Swiss Americans¹
- \$x Tactical aviation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Target practice
- \$x Test shooting
- \$x Training administrators¹
- \$x Transport of sick and wounded

Pattern Headings: Musical Compositions H 1160

8. *Lists of free-floating subdivisions.*

List 1 - Written or Printed Format of Music; Performed Version

- \$v 2-harpsichord scores
- \$v 2-organ scores
- \$v 2-piano scores
- \$v 3-piano scores
- \$v Chorus scores with organ
- \$v Chorus scores with piano
- \$v Chorus scores without accompaniment
- \$v Fake books
- \$v Lead sheets
- \$v Organ scores
- \$v Parts
- \$v Parts (solo)¹
- \$v Piano scores
- \$v Piano scores (4 hands)
- \$v Scores
- \$v Scores and parts
- \$v Scores and parts (solo)¹
- \$v Solo with harpsichord¹
- \$v Solo with harpsichord and piano¹
- \$v Solo with keyboard instrument¹
- \$v Solo with organ¹
- \$v Solo with piano¹
- \$v Solo with piano (4 hands)¹
- \$v Solo with pianos (2)¹
- \$v Solos with organ¹
- \$v Solos with piano¹
- \$v Solos with pianos (2)¹
- \$v Vocal scores with accordion
- \$v Vocal scores with continuo
- \$v Vocal scores with guitar
- \$v Vocal scores with harp
- \$v Vocal scores with harpsichord
- \$v Vocal scores with keyboard instrument
- \$v Vocal scores with organ
- \$v Vocal scores with organ and piano
- \$v Vocal scores with piano

H 1160 Pattern Headings: Musical Compositions

8. *Lists of free-floating subdivisions.*

List 1 - Written or Printed Format of Music; Performed Version (Continued)

- \$v Vocal scores with piano (4 hands)
- \$v Vocal scores with pianos (2)
- \$v Vocal scores without accompaniment

List 2 - Other Subdivisions for Musical Works

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$v Cadenzas
- \$v Excerpts²
- \$v Excerpts, Arranged²
- \$v Film adaptations
- \$v Instructive editions
- \$v Instrumental settings
- \$v Juvenile³
- \$v Librettos
- \$v Scenarios
- \$v Simplified editions
- \$v Stage guides
- \$v Teaching pieces
- \$v Television adaptations
- \$v Texts⁴

List 3 - Subdivisions for Literature and Other Materials about Music

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$x Analysis, appreciation
- \$v Audiocassette catalogs
- \$v Audiotape catalogs
- \$v Bibliography
- \$v Bibliography \$v Graded lists
- \$x Characters
- \$v Discography

Pattern Headings: Musical Compositions H 1160

8. *Lists of free-floating subdivisions.*

List 3 - Subdivisions for Literature and Other Materials about Music (Continued)

\$x Discography \$x Methodology
\$x First performances (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x History and criticism⁴
\$x Instruction and study (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Instruction and study \$v Juvenile
\$x Interpretation (Phrasing, dynamics, etc.)
\$x Literary themes, motives
\$x Performances (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Production and direction⁴ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Religious aspects^{4,5}
\$x Religious aspects \$x Baptists, [Catholic Church, etc.]^{4,5}
\$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]^{4,5}
\$v Stories, plots, etc.
\$v Thematic catalogs

NOTES

¹Valid for instrumental music only.

²Use only under headings for form or type of composition. Do not use the subdivision **–Excerpts** if the music has also been arranged for a medium of performance different from the original; instead, use the subdivision **–Excerpts, Arranged**. May be further subdivided by other musical presentation subdivisions.

³Not valid if the subdivision **–Juvenile sound recordings** (cf. H 1690) is used.

⁴Not valid under headings for dramatic music such as **Ballets, Dramatic music, Liturgical dramas, Masques with music, Operas, Oratorios, Pageants, Sacred pantomimes with music**.

⁵Not valid under headings for forms, e.g., **Sonatas**; headings with medium of performance, e.g., **Violin music; Concertos (Flute)**; or headings where religious function is implied, e.g., **Te Deum laudamus (Music); Wedding music**.

Pattern Headings: Musical Instruments H 1161

PATTERN: Piano; Clarinet; Violin

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED BY THE PATTERN: Headings for individual instruments, including brands and models of instruments, and families of instruments. *Examples:* **Flute; Fender guitar; Viols; Wind instruments.** This category does not include the general heading **Musical instruments.**

CONFLICTS: Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to the category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

LC practice:

If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procedures in H 193.

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$x Acoustics
- \$x Bowing
- \$x Breath control
- \$v Catalogs and collections (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Chord diagrams
- \$x Construction (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Customizing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Embouchure
- \$x Fingering
- \$x Fingering \$v Charts, diagrams, etc.
- \$x Harmonics
- \$x Instruction and study (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Instruction and study \$v Juvenile

H 1161 Pattern Headings: Musical Instruments

\$x Intonation
\$x Maintenance and repair
\$v Manufacturers' catalogs
\$v Methods
\$v Methods \$v Group instruction
\$v Methods \$v Juvenile
\$v Methods \$v Self-instruction
\$v Methods (Alternative rock)¹
\$v Methods (Alternative rock) \$v Group instruction¹
\$v Methods (Alternative rock) \$v Self-instruction¹
\$v Methods (Big band)¹
\$v Methods (Big band) \$v Group instruction¹
\$v Methods (Big band) \$v Self-instruction¹
\$v Methods (Bluegrass)¹
\$v Methods (Bluegrass) \$v Group instruction¹
\$v Methods (Bluegrass) \$v Self-instruction¹
\$v Methods (Blues)¹
\$v Methods (Blues) \$v Group instruction¹
\$v Methods (Blues) \$v Self-instruction¹
\$v Methods (Blues-rock)¹
\$v Methods (Blues-rock) \$v Group instruction¹
\$v Methods (Blues-rock) \$v Self-instruction¹
\$v Methods (Boogie woogie)¹
\$v Methods (Boogie woogie) \$v Group instruction¹
\$v Methods (Boogie woogie) \$v Self-instruction¹
\$v Methods (Bop)¹
\$v Methods (Bop) \$v Group instruction¹
\$v Methods (Bop) \$v Self-instruction¹
\$v Methods (Celtic)¹
\$v Methods (Celtic) \$v Group instruction¹
\$v Methods (Celtic) \$v Self-instruction¹
\$v Methods (Country)¹
\$v Methods (Country) \$v Group instruction¹
\$v Methods (Country) \$v Self-instruction¹
\$v Methods (Dixieland)¹
\$v Methods (Dixieland) \$v Group instruction¹
\$v Methods (Dixieland) \$v Self-instruction¹
\$v Methods (Folk)¹
\$v Methods (Folk) \$v Group instruction¹
\$v Methods (Folk) \$v Self-instruction¹

Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops H 1180

PATTERN: Corn

TYPES OF HEADINGS COVERED BY THE PATTERN: Headings for individual plants and crops and groups of plants and crops, including algae, fungi, and lichens, at all taxonomic levels, established using either common or scientific names. The pattern also covers headings for extinct and fossil plants. *Examples:* **Camellias; Eucalyptus alba; Rice; Basidiomycetes; Forage plants; Grain; Fruit; Weeds; Yeast fungi; Davis' peppergrass; Franklinia; Gymnosperms, Fossil.** The category does not include the headings **Plants; Plants, Cultivated; Crops; and Field crops.**

CONFLICTS: Any subdivision listed here can be used as a free-floating subdivision under any heading belonging to the category if it is appropriate and no conflict exists in the subject authority file. Subject authority records may exist for headings employing variant phrases or subdivisions equivalent to subdivisions on this list.

LC practice:

If an exceptional variant form is to be retained, make a UF reference from the equivalent free-floating subdivision form following the procedures in H 195 if the reference does not yet exist. Otherwise, submit a proposal to change the variant form along with all bibliographic records requiring correction following the procedures in H 193.

*Note: Most form subdivisions coded \$v in this list may also be used as topical subdivisions coded \$x when assigned to works **about** the form (see H 1075, sec. 1.d.).*

- \$x Abnormalities (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Adaptation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Age (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Age determination (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Aging
- \$x Aging \$x Genetic aspects
- \$x Analysis
- \$x Anatomy
- \$x Artificial growing media
- \$x Biological control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Biotechnology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Breeding¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Carbon content (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Catalogs and collections (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Chemical defenses (*May Subd Geog*)

H 1180 Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops

- \$x Chemotaxonomy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cladistic analysis (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Classification
- \$x Classification \$x Molecular aspects
- \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Clones (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Clones \$x Selection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Clones \$x Variation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Collection and preservation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Colonization (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Color (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Color \$x Fading (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Color \$x Fading \$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Color \$x Genetic aspects
- \$x Composition
- \$x Conservation² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Conservation \$x Law and legislation^{2,3} (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Control \$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Control \$x Law and legislation³ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cooling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cooperative marketing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Counting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cultural control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cuttings (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Cytochemistry
- \$x Cytogenetics
- \$x Cytology
- \$x Cytotaxonomy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Defenses (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Development (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Disease and pest resistance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Disease and pest resistance \$x Genetic aspects
- \$x Disease-free stock (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases and pests (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases and pests \$x Biological control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases and pests \$x Control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases and pests \$x Control \$x Environmental aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases and pests \$x Cultural control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Diseases and pests \$v Identification

Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops H 1180

\$x Diseases and pests \$x Integrated control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Diseases and pests \$x Monitoring (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Diseases and pests \$x Nutritional aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Dispersal (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Dormancy (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Drought tolerance (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Drying (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Ecology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Ecophysiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of acid deposition on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of acid precipitation on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of air pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of air pollution on \$x Genetic aspects
\$x Effect of aluminum sulfate on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of arsenic on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of atmospheric carbon dioxide on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of atmospheric deposition on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of atmospheric nitrogen dioxide on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of atmospheric ozone on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of browsing on² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of cadmium on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of cold on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of dichlorophenoxyacetic acid on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of dredging on² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of drought on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of ethephon on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of factory and trade waste on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of ferrous sulfate on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of fires on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of fires on \$x Genetic aspects
\$x Effect of floods on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of fluorides on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of fluorine on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of forest management on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of freezes on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of gamma rays on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of gases on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of global warming on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of glyphosate on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of grazing on (*May Subd Geog*)

H 1180 Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops

\$x Effect of greenhouse gases on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of heavy metals on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of ice on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of iron on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of light on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of magnesium on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of magnetism on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of manganese on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of minerals on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of off-road vehicles on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of oxygen on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of ozone on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of pesticides on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of poaching on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of potassium on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of radioactive pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of salt on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of soil acidity on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of stress on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of sufates on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of sulfur on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of temperature on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of thermal pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of trampling on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of trichloroethylene on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of turbidity on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of ultraviolet radiation on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of volcanic eruptions on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of water levels on² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of water pollution on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of water waves on² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Effect of wind on (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Electric properties (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Embryology
\$x Embryos (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Embryos \$x Nutrition (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Equipment and supplies
\$x Evolution (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops H 1180

- \$x Fertilizers (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Field experiments
- \$x Flowering
- \$x Flowering time
- \$x Frost damage (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Frost protection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Frost resistance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Fumigation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Genetic engineering (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Genetics
- \$x Genome mapping (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Geographical distribution
- \$x Geographical distribution \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Germplasm resources (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Germplasm resources \$v Catalogs and collections (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Germplasm resources \$x Cryopreservation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Gift books
- \$x Grading (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Grafting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Growing media (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Growth
- \$x Habitat (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Handling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Hardiness (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Harvesting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Harvesting \$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Harvesting time (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Health (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Heirloom varieties (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Herbicide injuries (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Histochemistry
- \$x Husking (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Hybridization (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Identification
- \$x Industrial applications (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Inoculation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Insect resistance (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Insect resistance \$x Genetic aspects
- \$x Inspection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Integrated control (*May Subd Geog*)

H 1180 Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops

- \$x Irrigation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Judging (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Law and legislation³ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Life cycles (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Location (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Longevity (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Losses (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Losses \$x Prevention
- \$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Marketing
- \$x Mechanical properties
- \$x Metabolism
- \$x Microbiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Micropropagation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Microscopy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Milling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Moisture (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Molecular aspects
- \$x Molecular genetics
- \$x Monitoring (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Morphogenesis (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Morphology
- \$x Mortality (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Mulching (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Mutation breeding (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$v Nomenclature
- \$v Nomenclature (Popular)
- \$x Nutrition (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Organic farming (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Origin
- \$x Osmotic potential (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Packaging (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Packing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Palynotaxonomy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Phenology
- \$x Photomorphogenesis
- \$x Phylogeny
- \$x Phylogeny \$x Molecular aspects
- \$x Physiological effect (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Physiology (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops H 1180

\$x Planting (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Planting time (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Pollen (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Pollen \$x Morphology
\$x Pollen management (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Pollination (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Population regeneration² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Population viability analysis² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Postharvest diseases and injuries (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Postharvest diseases and injuries \$x Biological control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Postharvest diseases and injuries \$x Integrated control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Postharvest losses (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Postharvest losses \$x Prevention
\$x Postharvest physiology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Postharvest technology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Precooling (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Preharvest sprouting (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Preservation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Prices (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Processing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Processing \$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Propagation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Protection (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Protection \$x Law and legislation³ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Provenance trials (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Provenances (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Pruning (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Psychic aspects (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Quality (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Radiation preservation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Radioactive contamination (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Radiography (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Regeneration (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Reintroduction² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Religious aspects
\$x Religious aspects \$x Baptists, [Catholic Church, etc.]
\$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism, [Christianity, etc.]
\$x Reproduction⁴
\$x Research (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Research \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)

H 1180 Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops

- \$x Residues (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Ripening (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Roots
- \$x Roots \$x Anatomy
- \$x Roots \$x Diseases and pests (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Roots \$x Physiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Rootstocks (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Sampling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seasonal variations (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seedlings
- \$x Seedlings \$x Diseases and pests (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seedlings \$x Ecophysiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seedlings \$x Effect of browsing on² (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seedlings \$x Evaluation
- \$x Seedlings \$x Protection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seedlings \$x Quality (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seedlings \$x Roots
- \$x Seedlings, Bareroot
- \$x Seedlings, Container
- \$x Seeds (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Anatomy
- \$x Seeds \$x Certification (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Dispersal (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Dormancy (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Drying (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Handling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Harvesting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$v Identification
- \$x Seeds \$x Marketing
- \$x Seeds \$x Morphology
- \$x Seeds \$x Packaging (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Physiology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Postharvest technology (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Predators of (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Processing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Quality (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Storage (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Seeds \$x Testing
- \$x Seeds \$x Viability (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops H 1180

\$x Selection (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Sensory evaluation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Shelling (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Shelling \$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Showing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Silage (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Silica content (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Size (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Soils (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Somatic embryogenesis (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Sowing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Spacing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Spores² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Spores \$x Morphology²
\$x Speciation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Storage (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Storage \$x Climatic factors (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Storage \$x Diseases and injuries (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Technological innovations (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Temperature (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Therapeutic use (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Therapeutic use \$x Side effects (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Thermal properties (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Thinning (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Threshing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Threshing \$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Toxicology (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Training (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Transplanting (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Transplanting \$x Machinery (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Transportation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Transportation \$x Diseases and injuries (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Type specimens (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Ultrastructure
\$x Utilization (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Varieties (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Variation² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Vegetative propagation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Vertical distribution² (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Virus diseases (*May Subd Geog*)

H 1180 Pattern Headings: Plants and Crops

\$x Viruses (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Vitality (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Water requirements (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Weed control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Wounds and injuries (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Wounds and injuries \$x Diagnosis (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Yields (*May Subd Geog*)

NOTES

¹Use –**Breeding** for the controlled mating and selection of plants by humans, usually for the purpose of improving the species or variety. Use –**Reproduction** for the physiological processes by which plants generate offspring of the same kind.

²Not established under **Corn**. Use under other plants as appropriate, for example, **Grasses–Conservation; Forest plants–Effect of browsing on; Aquatic plants–Effect of dredging on; Helophytes–Effect of water levels on; Aquatic plants–Population regeneration; Grasses–Population viability analysis; Grasses–Reintroduction; Trees–Seedlings–Effect of browsing on; Ferns–Spores; Grasses–Variation; Phytoplankton–Vertical distribution.**

³See H 1154.5 for further subdivisions used under legal topics.

⁴Use –**Reproduction** for the physiological processes by which plants generate offspring of the same kind. Use –**Breeding** for the controlled mating and selection of plants by humans, usually for the purpose of improving the species or variety.

Pattern Headings: Christian Denominations H 1187

\$v Hymns \$v Texts
\$v In art
\$x In literature
\$x In motion pictures
\$x Infallibility
\$x Influence
\$x Liturgical objects (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Liturgy
\$x Liturgy \$v Calendar
\$x Liturgy \$v Texts
\$x Liturgy \$x Texts \$v Concordances
\$x Liturgy \$x Texts \$x History and criticism
\$x Liturgy \$x Texts \$v Illustrations
\$x Liturgy \$v Texts \$v Manuscripts
\$x Liturgy \$x Texts \$v Rubrics
\$x Liturgy \$x Theology
\$x Liturgy, Experimental
\$x Membership
\$x Missions (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Museums (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Name
\$x On postage stamps
\$v Pastoral letters and charges
\$x Political activity (*May Subd Geog*)
\$v Prayers and devotions
\$x Prayers and devotions \$x History and criticism
\$x Publishing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Relations
\$x Relations \$x Anglican Communion, [Lutheran Church, etc.]
\$x Relations \$x Buddhism, [Judaism, etc.]
\$x Relations \$x Evangelicalism
\$x Relations \$x Protestant churches
\$v Sermons
\$x Sermons \$x History and criticism
\$x Teaching office

NOTE

¹See H 1100 for further subdivisions used under classes of persons.

Pattern Headings: Land Vehicles H 1195

- \$x Fuel systems
- \$x Fuel systems \$x Vapor lock
- \$x Gas producers (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Grilles
- \$x Handling characteristics (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Heating and ventilation (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Horns
- \$x Hydraulic equipment
- \$x Ignition
- \$x Ignition \$x Electronic systems
- \$x Inspection (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Instrument panels
- \$x Instrument panels \$x Padding
- \$x Instruments
- \$x Instruments \$x Display systems
- \$x Interiors (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Lateral stability
- \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Licenses (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Licenses \$x Fees (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Lighting (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Lighting \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Locks
- \$x Lubrication
- \$x Maintenance and repair
- \$x Maintenance and repair \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Marketing
- \$x Materials (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Materials \$x Dynamic testing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Misfueling (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Models (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Models \$x Finishing (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Models \$x Radio control (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors
- \$x Motors \$x Bearings (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors \$x Camshafts
- \$x Motors \$x Carburetors
- \$x Motors \$x Combustion (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors \$x Computer control systems (*May Subd Geog*)
- \$x Motors \$x Control systems

H 1195 Pattern Headings: Land Vehicles

\$x Motors \$x Cooling (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Motors \$x Cooling systems (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Motors \$x Crankshafts
\$x Motors \$x Cylinder blocks
\$x Motors \$x Cylinder heads (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Motors \$x Cylinders
\$x Motors \$x Electronic fuel injection systems
\$x Motors \$x Exhaust gas (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Motors \$x Exhaust gas \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Motors \$x Exhaust systems
\$x Motors \$x Fuel injection systems
\$x Motors \$x Knock (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Motors \$x Lubrication systems (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Motors \$x Modification (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Motors \$x Mufflers
\$x Motors \$x Mufflers \$x Acoustic properties (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Motors \$x Oil filters
\$x Motors \$x Parts (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Motors \$x Pistons and piston rings
\$x Motors \$x Soundproofing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Motors \$x Superchargers
\$x Motors \$x Thermodynamics
\$x Motors \$x Timing belts (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Motors \$x Turbochargers
\$x Motors \$x Valves (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Motors \$x Vibration (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Motors (Compressed-gas) (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Motors (Diesel)
\$x Motors (Diesel) \$x Exhaust gas (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Motors (Liquid nitrogen) (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Motors (Two-stroke cycle)
\$x Occupant restraint systems (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Off-road operation (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Painting (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Parts (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Parts \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Performance (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Pneumatic equipment
\$x Pollution control devices
\$x Pollution control devices \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)

Pattern Headings: Land Vehicles H 1195

\$x Power trains (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Prices (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Prices \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Protection (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Radiator ornaments
\$x Radiators
\$x Radio equipment
\$x Radio equipment \$x Security measures (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Registration and transfer (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Registration and transfer \$x Fees (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Retarders (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Riding qualities (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Rollover protective structures (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Safety appliances (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Scrapping (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seat belts
\$x Seat belts \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Seats (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Serial numbers
\$x Service life (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Shock absorbers
\$x Sizes (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Skidding (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Snow protection and removal (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Speed
\$x Spray control (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Springs and suspension (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Stability
\$x Starting devices (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Steering-gear
\$x Tires
\$x Tires \$x Inflation pressure
\$x Tires \$x Repairing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Towing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Traction (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Transaxles
\$x Transmission devices
\$x Transmission devices, Automatic
\$x Transmission devices, Automatic \$x Parts (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Transportation (*May Subd Geog*)

H 1195 Pattern Headings: Land Vehicles

\$x Transportation \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Upholstery (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Vibration (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Welding (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Wheels
\$x Wheels \$x Alignment (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Wheels \$x Balancing (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Windows and windshields (*May Subd Geog*)
\$x Windows and windshields \$x Law and legislation¹ (*May Subd Geog*)

NOTE

¹See H 1154.5 for further subdivisions used under legal topics.

Contents of Volume Three

Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, etc.

<i>H 1205</i>	Abstracts
<i>H 1206.5</i>	Acronyms
<i>H 1210</i>	Addresses, Essays, Lectures
<i>H 1210.5</i>	Aerial and Space Photography
<i>H 1211</i>	Airports
<i>H 1223</i>	Arabs
<i>H 1225</i>	Archaeological Works
<i>H 1230</i>	Archives and Archival Resources
<i>H 1250</i>	Art and Fine Art
<i>H 1255</i>	Artistic Photography
<i>H 1265</i>	Awards
<i>H 1285</i>	Battles
<i>H 1295</i>	Bible: Special Topics
<i>H 1300</i>	Bible and Other Sacred Works
<i>H 1322</i>	Bibliographies about Individual Persons
<i>H 1325</i>	Bibliography of Bibliographies
<i>H 1328</i>	Bio-bibliography
<i>H 1330</i>	Biography
<i>H 1332</i>	Biological Names
<i>H 1333</i>	Books and Reading
<i>H 1333.5</i>	Boundaries
<i>H 1334</i>	Buildings and Other Structures
<i>H 1334.5</i>	Buildings and Structures in Cities: Assignment of Headings
<i>H 1350</i>	Case Studies and Cases
<i>H 1360</i>	Catalogs
<i>H 1361</i>	Catalogs of Library Materials
<i>H 1365</i>	Cemeteries
<i>H 1366</i>	Census
<i>H 1367</i>	Chronology
<i>H 1370</i>	Civilization
<i>H 1412</i>	Classical and Ancient Works
<i>H 1425</i>	Collected Works and Collections
<i>H 1427</i>	Collections of Objects
<i>H 1430</i>	Comics and Comic Characters
<i>H 1435</i>	Commentaries on Individual Works
<i>H 1438</i>	Composers and Works about Music of Individual Composers
<i>H 1460</i>	Congresses
<i>H 1465</i>	Constitutions

Contents of Volume Three

Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, etc.

<i>H 1468</i>	Contracts
<i>H 1472</i>	Controversial Literature
<i>H 1475</i>	Cooking and Cookbooks
<i>H 1480</i>	Correspondence of Individual Persons
<i>H 1510</i>	Cross-Cultural Studies
<i>H 1520</i>	Databases
<i>H 1530</i>	Description and Travel
<i>H 1532</i>	Design and Construction
<i>H 1538</i>	Diaries
<i>H 1540</i>	Dictionaries
<i>H 1550</i>	Digests
<i>H 1558</i>	Directories
<i>H 1560</i>	Disasters, Riots, Demonstrations, etc.
<i>H 1564</i>	Discovery and Exploration
<i>H 1570</i>	Dissertations and Theses
<i>H 1574</i>	Dynasties, Royal Houses, etc.
<i>H 1576</i>	Early Works
<i>H 1578</i>	Economic Conditions
<i>H 1579</i>	Education
<i>H 1580</i>	Effect of One Topic on Another
<i>H 1580.5</i>	Electronic Serials
<i>H 1581</i>	Emigration and Immigration
<i>H 1591</i>	Evaluation
<i>H 1592</i>	Events
<i>H 1593</i>	Exhibitions
<i>H 1595</i>	Facsimiles
<i>H 1600</i>	Festschriften
<i>H 1610</i>	Fictitious Characters
<i>H 1624</i>	Finance
<i>H 1627</i>	Folklore
<i>H 1628</i>	Forecasting
<i>H 1629</i>	Foreign Relations
<i>H 1630</i>	Gazetteers
<i>H 1631</i>	Genealogy and Family Names
<i>H 1636</i>	Gods of Greek and Roman Mythology
<i>H 1642</i>	Government Policy
<i>H 1643</i>	Government Publications
<i>H 1645</i>	Guidebooks

Archaeological Works H 1225

1. *General rule.* (Continued)

d. Excavations (Archaeology)–[place]. Assign this heading if the work is about excavations carried out in the place, including techniques used, artifacts recovered, etc. Do not divide this heading by names of individual sites.

2. Catalogs of antiquities. Use the free-floating form subdivision **–Catalogs** under names of individual sites and under headings of the type **[place]–Antiquities** and **Excavations (Archaeology)–[place]** for works listing objects found at those sites.

Do not use **–Catalogs** under headings for peoples. For example, use **Rome–Antiquities– Catalogs**, not **Romans–Catalogs**.

3. Establishing names of individual sites. In general, follow the rules in H 690, *Formulating Geographic Headings*, for establishing archaeological sites. For those archaeological sites that are obscure and unlikely to be found in any standard reference sources, select the site name on the basis of the work being cataloged. Add the word **Site** to the name unless the name includes a term that implies an archaeological site, for example, **Canyon Creek Ruin (Ariz.)**. Add the appropriate geographic qualifier. Qualify headings for sites within cities by the name of the city (cf. H 810).
Examples:

```
151 ## $a Fengate Site (England)
151 ## $a Agate Basin Site (Wyo.)
151 ## $a Young Site (Alton, Me.)
```

Add the following 451 and 551 (broader term) fields:

```
451 ## $a [alternate name(s)] ([geographic qualifier])
551 ## $w g $a [modern country] $x Antiquities
```

Note: In the above model, the term [modern country] refers, in the case of Canada, Great Britain, and the United States, to the first order political division.

If the site *currently* functions as a farm or plantation, also add the 550 (broader term) **\$a Farms \$z [modern country]** or **\$a Plantations \$z [modern country]**.

If the site constitutes the remains of an extinct city, establish it as an extinct city rather than an archaeological site, following the provisions of H 715.

If the case of a cemetery that is an archaeological site, establish the cemetery as a name heading, omitting the word **Site**, in accordance with H 405, Group 1.

H 1225 Archaeological Works

3. *Establishing names of individual sites. (Continued)*

If the site is a cave or mound site and the cave or mound has been named, establish the name of the cave or mound, omitting the word **Site**. Add the 550 (broader term) **\$a Caves \$z [modern country]** or **\$a Mounds \$z [modern country]** in addition to the references specified in the model above.

Examples:

```
151 ## $a Texcal Cave (Mexico)
550 ## $w $g $a Caves $z Mexico
551 ## $w $g $a Mexico $x Antiquities

151 ## $a Wise Rockshelter (Ohio)
550 ## $w $g $a Caves $z Ohio
551 ## $w $g $a Ohio $x Antiquities

151 ## $a Lewis Creek Mound (Va.)
550 ## $w $g $a Mounds $z Virginia
551 ## $w $g $a Virginia $x Antiquities
```

4. *Examples of headings assigned to individual works:*

Title: Archaeological treasures of ancient Egypt.

```
651 #0 $a Egypt $x Antiquities.
```

Title: Etruscan painted tombs of Tarquinia, Italy.

```
651 #0 $a Tarquinia (Italy) $x Antiquities.
650 #0 $a Etruscans $z Italy $z Tarquinia.
650 #0 $a Tombs $z Italy $z Tarquinia.
650 #0 $a Mural painting and decoration, Etruscan $z Italy
      $z Tarquinia.
```

Title: Remains of Roman roads in Lombardy.

```
651 #0 $a Lombardy (Italy) $x Antiquities, Roman.
650 #0 $a Roads, Roman $z Italy $z Lombardy.
```

Title: Studies of Phoenician settlements in early Spain.

```
651 #0 $a Spain $x Antiquities, Phoenician.
650 #0 $a Phoenicians $z Spain.
```


1. Art by more than one artist. (Continued)

i. Examples.

Title: 20th century art of Kansas.

650 #0 \$a Art, American \$z Kansas \$y 20th century.

Title: Islamic art from Egypt in the Metropolitan Museum.

650 #0 \$a Art, Egyptian.

650 #0 \$a Islamic art \$z Egypt.

650 #0 \$a Art \$z New York (State) \$z New York.

610 20 \$a Metropolitan Museum of Art (New York, N.Y.)

Title: Colonial Mexican sculpture of Puebla state in Mexico City collections.

650 #0 \$a Sculpture, Mexican \$z Mexico \$z Puebla (State)

650 #0 \$a Sculpture, Colonial \$z Mexico \$z Puebla (State)

650 #0 \$a Sculpture \$z Mexico \$z Mexico City.

Title: Korean art of the 19th century.

650 #0 \$a Art, Korean \$y Chosŏn dynasty, 1392-1910.

Title: Newar art during the Malla period.

650 #0 \$a Art, Newari.

600 30 \$a Malla dynasty.

Title: Catalog of 19th century American Victorian painting on the theme of love in the Corcoran Gallery.

650 #0 \$a Painting, American \$y 19th century \$v Catalogs.

650 #0 \$a Painting, Victorian \$z United States \$v Catalogs.

650 #0 \$a Love in art \$v Catalogs.

650 #0 \$a Painting \$z Washington (D.C.) \$v Catalogs.

610 20 \$a Corcoran Gallery of Art \$v Catalogs.

H 1250 Art and Fine Art

I. Art by more than one artist.

i. Examples. (Continued)

*Title: The Jan Smith Photograph Collection in the Corcoran Gallery :
photographs of French paintings.*

650 #0 \$a Painting, French.
600 10 \$a Smith, Jan \$x Photograph collections.
650 #0 \$a Photograph collections \$z Washington (D.C.)
610 20 \$a Corcoran Gallery of Art.

Title: Catalog of reproductions of paintings, 1860-1979.

650 #0 \$a Painting, Modern \$y 19th century
\$v Catalogs.
650 #0 \$a Painting, Modern \$y 20th century
\$v Catalogs.

Title: Early Romantic painting : the late 18th century.

650 #0 \$a Painting, Modern \$y 18th century.
650 #0 \$a Romanticism in art.

Title: French sculpture of the 13th century.

650 #0 \$a Sculpture, French \$y 13th century.
650 #0 \$a Sculpture, Medieval \$z France.

Title: Dada : a bibliography.

650 #0 \$a Dadaism \$v Bibliography.

Title: Romanesque mural painting.

650 #0 \$a Mural painting and decoration, Romanesque.

*Title: Victorian painting : the Edmund J. and Suzanne McCormick
Collection : an exhibition at the Yale Center for British Art.*

650 #0 \$a Painting, British \$y 19th century
\$v Exhibitions.
650 #0 \$a Painting, Victorian \$z Great Britain
\$v Exhibitions.
600 10 \$a McCormick, Edmund J. \$x Art collections
\$v Exhibitions.
600 10 \$a McCormick, Suzanne \$x Art collections
\$v Exhibitions.
650 #0 \$a Painting \$x Private collections \$z United
States \$v Exhibitions.

Bible and Other Sacred Works H 1300

BACKGROUND: *The sacred books of the world's religions, such as the Bible, Book of Mormon, Koran, Tripitaka, Vedas, etc., have been translated from their original form into other languages in the course of their history. Generally, translations are made from original texts. In some instances, a modern translation is made from an earlier version, rather than from the original language, for example, an English translation from the Aramaic Targum of Ezekiel, which is itself a translation from the Hebrew. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for assigning headings to works about versions (translations) of particular sacred books, including their individual parts. It also provides guidelines for assigning form headings to modern translations of early versions in order to create a link between the early and modern translations.*

1. Translating. Use the free-floating subdivision –**Translating** under the uniform title for a sacred work, or its individual parts, for works on the process of rendering the book from one language to another, including methodology, tools, etc., for example, **Book of Mormon– Translating**.

2. Versions.

a. General works. Use the free-floating subdivision –**Versions** under the uniform title for a sacred book, or its individual parts, for general works that discuss collectively translations of the sacred book, for example, **Bible–Versions; Beatitudes–Versions**.

b. By language.

(1) Language groups. Use the free-floating subdivision –**Versions, [name of language group]** for works that discuss collectively the translations of a sacred book, or its individual parts, into languages belonging to that group, for example, **Bible–Versions, Slavic**.

Do not use the adjectival qualifier for discussions of versions in an individual language.

(2) Individual languages. Use the free-floating subdivision –**Versions** under **[uniform title]. [language of translation]** for general works on translations of a sacred book, or its individual parts, into an individual language, for example, **Koran. Urdu–Versions**.

H 1300 Bible and Other Sacred Works

2. *Versions.* (Continued)

c. Denominational versions. Use subdivisions of the type –**Versions**, [*name of denomination*] for works that discuss translations prepared for use by members of a particular religious denomination, for example, **Bible–Versions, Baptist**. If these versions are in a particular language, assign an additional heading to bring out the language of the versions, for example, **Bible. English–Versions**.

d. Individual versions.

(1) *General.* Use the free-floating subdivision –**Versions**–[*name of version*] under the uniform title, or its individual parts, to which the language of the translation has been added, for works that discuss a particular translation of a sacred book. Use as a free-floating subdivision the name of the version as it appears in the uniform title for the translation, for example, **Bible. English–Versions–Authorized**.

(2) *Translations of early versions.* Some modern translations of sacred works are made from earlier translations rather than from the original language. The uniform title for the modern translation does not include the language and name of the earlier version. To provide a connection between the modern and the early version for these special translations only, assign a form heading of the type [*uniform title for the early version*]–**Translations into** [*name of language*], for example, **Bible. O.T. Pentateuch. Aramaic. Targum Pseudo-Jonathan–Translations into English**.

Do not provide a form heading of this type for a translation of a sacred work made from the language in which it was originally written. For example, an English translation of the Gospel of John from Greek should not be assigned the form heading **Bible. N.T. John. Greek–Translations into English**.

Bible and Other Sacred Works H 1300

3. Examples.

Title: The translation debate : what makes a Bible translation good?

630 00 \$a Bible \$x Translating.

630 00 \$a Bible \$x Versions.

Title: A Bibliography of scriptures in African languages.

630 00 \$a Bible \$x Versions, African \$v Bibliography.

Title: Catholic German Bibles from the Reformation until today.

630 00 \$a Bible \$x Versions, Catholic \$x History.

630 00 \$a Bible. \$l German \$x Versions \$x History.

Title: About the New English Bible.

630 00 \$a Bible. \$l English \$x Versions \$x New English.

Title: The Targums of Onkelos and Jonathan ben Uzziel on the Pentateuch. 1968.

630 00 \$a Bible. \$p O.T. \$p Pentateuch. \$l Aramaic.

\$s Onkelos \$v Translations into English.

9. *Animals with proper names.*

Examples: (Continued)

150 ## \$a Gargantua (Gorilla)
550 ## \$w g \$a Gorilla

150 ## \$a Namu (Whale)
550 ## \$w g \$a Whales

150 ## \$a Henry (Horse)
550 ## \$w g \$a Horses

150 ## \$a Old Abe (Eagle)
550 ## \$w g \$a Eagles

For guidelines on assigning headings to biographies of individual animals and anecdotal works about pets, see H 1720, sec. 3.

10. Fossil names. Follow the same guidelines given in sec. 1-7 for names of living organisms to establish headings for names of fossil animals and plants.

a. Form of name. For animals and plants existing in both Recent and earlier geologic time periods, base the fossil headings on the established headings for the living animals and plants in Latin or common forms. Add the qualifier , **Fossil**, for example, **Silicoflagellates, Fossil**; **Rhinoceroses, Fossil**. If headings for the living groups are not yet established, establish them at the same time as the fossil headings.

For fossils that existed only in earlier geologic time periods and did not survive into the Recent Epoch, such as **Dinosaurs**, establish them without the qualifier , **Fossil**. Base the heading on names found in predominant use in standard paleontology reference sources and texts, such as *Fossil Record 2*; *Treatise on Invertebrate Paleontology*; *Vertebrate Paleontology and Evolution*; *Dinosaur Encyclopedia*; *Mammalian Paleofaunas of the World*; *Index of Generic Names of Fossil Plants*; *Biology and Evolution of Fossil Plants*.

b. References. Make no UF references beginning with the word **Fossil**. Make BT references from the next broader level in the hierarchy of genus, family, order, class, phylum, or division. Whenever necessary, establish the next broader level in order to make the BT reference.

H 1332 Biological Names

10. Fossil names. (Continued)

c. Classification numbers. Provide classification numbers from the QE (Geology; Paleontology) schedule in 053 fields, as specifically as that schedule allows.

11. Subdivisions. For free-floating subdivisions used under animals, see H 1147. For free-floating subdivisions used under plants and crops, see H 1180.

Buildings and Other Structures H 1334

BACKGROUND: *This instruction sheet provides guidelines for establishing and assigning names of buildings and other structures as subject headings. The following types of entities are covered by these guidelines:*

*Bridges
Buildings and building complexes (castles, houses, city halls, etc.)
Building details (windows, doors, domes, rooms)
Fortresses
Gates
Monuments
Plazas
Tunnels
Walls*

In the case of structures that house corporate bodies, the provisions of this instruction sheet apply to those structures known by different names from the organizations that occupy them. Generally, when a building is known by the same name as the corporate body that occupies it, a corporate name heading is established for the body and that name heading is used as a subject heading for works about either the organization or the building. Typical cases include buildings such as churches, schools, hospitals, libraries, prisons, etc. Exceptions to this general rule are occasionally made on a case-by-case basis when there are special circumstances warranting an exception.

1. Existing headings. If an established heading for a structure is needed for cataloging new material and it does not conform to the guidelines in this instruction sheet, change it as necessary. Follow the procedures in H 193.

2. Form of entry.

a. Model:

```
1XX X# $a [name of structure] ([geographic qualifier])
4XX X# $a [alternate name(s)] ([geographic
qualifier])
550 ## $w g $a [type of structure] $z [country, or first
order division]
```

Do not add a broader term of the type **[name of city]–Buildings, structures, etc.**; instead, assign a heading of that type to the work being cataloged, as described in sec. 7, below.

b. Tagging. Consult the list of Group 2 headings in H 405 for the appropriate MARC tag to use for the type of structure proposed.

H 1334 Buildings and Other Structures

2. *Form of entry.* (Continued)

c. Entry term. Enter the heading for a particular building or structure directly under its own name, in uninverted form, and qualify it by the name of the geographic entity in which the structure is located. Also enter structures in cities directly under name rather than under the name of the city. For a building known by its street address rather than a name, use the address, for example, **Number 10 Downing Street (London, England)**. For building details, see sec. 5, below.

Do not formulate a heading for a named structure that consists solely of a generic term with a geographic qualifier unless there is evidence that this is also the *proper* name of the structure.

d. Language.

(1) *Post-1500 entities.* Establish the name of a structure built after 1500 in the vernacular of the country in which it is located.

(2) *Pre-1500 entities.* If the name of a structure of pre-1500 origin has become firmly established in an English form in English language usage, establish it in this English form. Determine this by consulting those English language reference sources that are readily available.

Do not treat informal generic references to the structure (such as "a castle in [...]"), as justification for establishing its name in English. If no firmly established English form exists, establish the name in the vernacular of the country in which it is located.

(3) *Provisional headings.* If, according to the above rules, the vernacular form is required but cannot be found either in the work being cataloged or in readily available reference sources, use the form found in the work being cataloged. In a 670 field, provide a brief explanation, such as **Established in English; vernacular form not found**. Add a 952 field with the word **Provisional**. When preparing the record to be assigned to a weekly list, the Data Integrity Section will code for "Provisional" in field 008/33 (the **Level of Establishment** box on the 008 input screen for authority records in the LC ILS). If, when cataloging a subsequent work for which the heading is required, the vernacular form is found, submit a proposal to change the established heading to the proper form and to remove the "provisional" coding, changing it to "fully established" (code **a** in field 008/33).

Buildings and Other Structures H 1334

4. References.

a. UF references. (Continued)

(2) **Translating and rearranging elements.** If an English form is not found and if a vernacular heading includes a generic term for which there is a clear English equivalent, translate the generic term. Rearrange the words in the heading to bring the proper name portion into the first position, if necessary. *Example:*

```
110 2# $a Castillo de Ponferrada (Ponferrada, Spain)
410 2# $a Ponferrada Castle (Ponferrada,
      Spain)
```

(3) **Proper name in the initial position.** If the name of the structure as established in the heading has a generic term rather than a proper name in the first position, add a 4XX field with the name inverted in such a way as to bring the proper name into the first position. However, omit this inverted 4XX field if any of the other 4XX fields in straight order begin with the same word. *Example:*

```
110 2# $a Castillo de Ponferrada (Ponferrada, Spain)
410 2# $a Ponferrada Castle (Ponferrada,
      Spain)
```

Do not add the following 410 since the first 410 begins with the same word:

```
[410 2# $a Ponferrada, Castillo de (Ponferrada,
      Spain)]
```

(4) **Buildings established as street addresses.** Do not add a 4XX field with the numeral of the street address spelled out, unless that form is actually found in the item being cataloged or in other sources that were consulted. *Example:*

```
110 2# $a 2040 Union Street (San Francisco, Calif.)
```

Do not add the following 410s unless these forms are found in the item being cataloged or in other sources:

```
[410 2# $a Twenty forty Union Street (San Francisco
      Calif.) ]
[410 2# $a Two thousand four hundred Union Street
      San Francisco (Calif.)]
```

H 1334 Buildings and Other Structures

4. References.

b. Broader terms. Consult recent subject authority records whose references have been evaluated to determine patterns for the appropriate 5XX (broader term) field to add for [*type of structure*]. In late 1984, the implementation of new policies for creating BTs resulted in many changes in reference patterns for named buildings, structures, etc. The most significant of these are listed below.

Note: For information on the geographic subdivision used in broader term references for structures (shown by the notation [place] in the examples below), see H 375.

Public buildings. The broader term **Public buildings**–[place] is made only for those public buildings for which it is not possible to construct a broader term [*specific type of building*]–[place] because their only function is to house government offices.

Bridges. Make the broader term **Bridges**–[country, or first order political division]. The construction type of the bridge, for example, **Suspension bridges**, is not brought out as a broader term. The body of water the bridge spans is not brought out as a broader term.

Dwellings. The broader term **Architecture, Domestic**–[place] is no longer made. Instead, **Architecture, Domestic**–[place] is assigned as a heading to architectural studies of a particular dwelling. Because of the subjective nature of determining what is a mansion, use **Dwellings**–[place] rather than **Mansions**–[place] for dwellings that may be described as mansions.

Official residences of heads of government or other officials. Two broader terms are added: **Official residences**–[place] and [*type of head of government or official*]–**Dwellings**–[place].

Historic buildings. Do not add a broader term **Historic buildings**–[place]. Instead add a broader term [*specific type of building*]–[place].

Temporary exhibition buildings. Add a broader term **Exhibition buildings**–[place]. Do not add a broader term from the name heading for the exhibition.

Buildings and Other Structures H 1334

5. *Building details.* Enter a named building detail that forms a part of the basic fabric of a building directly under its name. Use as a qualifier the name of the building, generally followed by a comma and the geographic location of the building. Examples of this type of detail are windows, doors, portals, domes, rooms. Establish a heading only if the detail is named. If a work discusses a part of a building that is not named, assign the appropriate generic heading and the heading for the name of the building instead.

Model:

```
1XX ## $a [name of detail] ([name of structure], [geographic  
qualifier]*)  
4XX ## $a [alternate name(s)] ([name of structure],  
[geographic qualifier]*)  
5XX X# $w g $a [name of structure]  
550 ## $w g $a [type of detail] $z [country]
```

*If the heading for the structure is a name heading established without a geographic qualifier, omit the geographic element.

6. *Parts of complex structures.* Also establish the name of a component part of a complex structure directly under its own name, following the pattern in sec. 5, above, for example, a pagoda forming part of a temple complex.

7. *Assignment of headings.* Assign the appropriate combination of the following types of headings to a work about an individual structure:

```
6XX X0 $a [name of structure].
```

```
651 #0 $a [name of city] $x Buildings, structures, etc.
```

Assign this heading if the structure or building is located in a city and the work being cataloged discusses it from the architectural standpoint, that is, if it describes the structure or building as a physical entity.

```
6X0 X0 $a [name of architect or architectural firm].
```

Assign this heading if the work discusses the structure from the architectural point of view, and if the name of the architect or firm is readily available.

H 1334 Buildings and Other Structures

7. Assignment of headings. (Continued)

6X0 X0 \$a [*name of owner, resident, etc.*] \$x Homes and haunts
\$z [*place*].

Assign if the work discusses the person, family, or performing group who owns or resides in the structure.

600 X0 \$a [*name of person memorialized*] \$x Monuments \$z [*place*].

Assign this heading if the structure is a memorial or monument erected in honor of a particular person, and the name of the person is readily available.

6XX X0 \$a [*any special feature or topic appropriate to the work being cataloged*].

The name of the structure in the first heading above refers either to a corporate name heading established by descriptive catalogers and used by subject catalogers to designate a named structure, for example, churches, museums, etc., or to a heading for an individual structure established by subject catalogers in accordance with the provisions of the earlier portion of this instruction sheet.

The order of headings assigned to a particular work depends on the emphasis of the work, and may not correspond to the order given above.

8. Examples.

151 ## \$a Brooklyn Bridge (New York, N.Y.)
550 ## \$w g \$a Bridges \$z New York (State)

151 ## \$a Pont-Neuf (Paris, France)
550 ## \$w g \$a Bridges \$z France

151 ## \$a Westminster Bridge (London, England)
550 ## \$w g \$a Bridges \$z England

110 2# \$a Castillo de Ponferrada (Ponferrada, Spain)
410 2# \$a Ponferrada Castle (Ponferrada, Spain)
550 ## \$w g \$a Castles \$z Spain

Buildings and Other Structures H 1334

8. *Examples. (Continued)*

110 2# \$a Schloss Halbturm (Halbturm, Austria)
410 2# \$a Halbturm Castle (Halbturm, Austria)
550 ## \$w g \$a Castles \$z Austria

110 2# \$a Château de Versailles (Versailles, France)
410 2# \$a Versailles Palace (Versailles, France)
550 ## \$w g \$a Palaces \$z France

151 ## \$a Yihe Yuan (Beijing, China)
451 ## \$w nne \$a I Ho Yüan (Beijing, China)
451 ## \$w nne \$a I Ho Yüan (Peking, China)
451 ## \$a Summer Palace (Beijing, China)
451 ## \$a Yi He Yuan (Beijing, China)
550 ## \$w g \$a Parks \$z China

110 2# \$a Herbert Hoover Memorial Building (Stanford, Calif.)
410 2# \$a Herbert Hoover Memorial Education Building
(Stanford, Calif.)
410 2# \$a Hoover Memorial Building (Stanford, Calif.)
550 ## \$w g \$a College buildings \$z California

110 2# \$a 2040 Union Street (San Francisco, Calif.)
550 ## \$w g \$a Dwellings \$z California

110 2# \$a Maison Fornel (Québec, Québec)
410 2# \$a Fornel House (Québec, Québec)
410 2# \$a Maison Villeray (Québec, Québec)
410 2# \$a Villeray House (Québec, Québec)
550 ## \$w g \$a Dwellings \$z Québec (Province)

110 2# \$a Mount Clare (Baltimore, Md. : Building)
550 ## \$w g \$a Dwellings \$z Maryland

H 1334 Buildings and Other Structures

8. *Examples. (Continued)*

110 2# \$a Library of Congress James Madison Memorial Building
(Washington, D.C.)
410 2# \$a James Madison Memorial Building (Washington,
D.C.)
410 2# \$a Library of Congress Madison Building
(Washington, D.C.)
410 2# \$a Madison Building, Library of Congress
(Washington, D.C.)
550 ## \$w g \$a Library buildings \$z Washington (D.C.)

110 2# \$a White House (Washington, D.C.)
550 ## \$a Official residences \$z Washington (D.C.)
550 ## \$w g \$a Presidents \$x Dwellings \$z Washington (D.C.)

110 2# \$a Indian Point Nuclear Power Plant (N.Y.)
550 ## \$w g \$a Nuclear power plants \$z New York (State)

110 2# \$a Hauptbahnhof (Hamburg, Germany)
550 ## \$w g \$a Railroad stations \$z Germany

110 2# \$a Cleveland Municipal Stadium (Cleveland, Ohio)
410 2# \$a Municipal Stadium (Cleveland, Ohio)
550 ## \$w g \$a Stadiums \$z Ohio

110 2# \$a Presbytère (New Orleans, La.)
550 ## \$w g \$a Buildings \$z Louisiana

110 2# \$a Hadrian's Villa (Tivoli, Italy)
410 2# \$a Adriana Villa (Tivoli, Italy)
410 2# \$a Villa Adriana (Tivoli, Italy)
551 ## \$w g \$a Italy \$x Antiquities
550 ## \$w g \$a Palaces \$z Italy

110 2# \$a Saitō (Yakushiji, Nara-shi, Japan)
410 2# \$a West Pagoda (Yakushiji, Nara-shi, Japan)
550 ## \$w g \$a Pagodas \$z Japan
510 2# \$w g \$a Yakushiji (Nara-shi, Japan)

Catalogs of Library Materials H 1361

4. *Catalogs of audiovisual materials. (Continued)*

b. Special forms. For works that list only one form of audiovisual materials, such as films, use, under topical heading, the free-floating subdivision appropriate for that form, for example, **–Discography**, **–Film catalogs**, **–Audiocassette catalogs**, **–Audiotape catalogs**, **–CD-ROM catalogs**, or **–Compact disc catalogs**. Under the headings for the name of the institution in which the materials are housed and the name of the collection, use the subdivision **–Catalogs** rather than the more specific form heading used under the topic.
Example:

Title: Catalogue of engineering films in the John Doe Film Collection at the Smith Library.

650 #0 \$a Engineering \$v Film catalogs.

610 20 \$a Smith Library \$v Catalogs.

610 20 \$a John Doe Film Collection \$v Catalogs.

If the work is not topical, assign, instead of **Audio-visual materials–Catalogs**, the more specific form heading with the subdivision **–Catalogs**, for example, **Video tapes–Catalogs**.

Note: For classification of discographies, see F 582.

c. Microform catalogs. Use the subdivision **–Microform catalogs** to refer to microforms in general or to any specific type of microform, such as microfilms. Assign the following combination of headings to microform catalogs:

650 #0 \$a [topic of the works listed] \$v Bibliography
\$v Microform catalogs.

[Omit **–Bibliography** if the heading **Manuscripts** or the subdivision **–Manuscripts** is used.]

610 X0 \$a [name of the institution] \$v Microform catalogs.

6XX X0 \$a [name of the collection, if any] \$v Microform
catalogs.

When possible, assign an additional heading for the form of the material stored in a particular type of microform, for example, **Pamphlets–Bibliography–Microform catalogs**; **Periodicals–Bibliography–Microform catalogs**. Otherwise, assign the general heading **Microforms–Catalogs** as the additional heading.

H 1361 Catalogs of Library Materials

4. Catalogs of audiovisual materials.

c. Microform catalogs. (Continued)

Examples:

Title: Guide to the Doe Collection of geographical materials in microform in the Smith Library.

650 #0 \$a Geography \$v Bibliography \$v Microform catalogs.

610 20 \$a Smith Library \$v Microform catalogs.

600 10 \$a Doe, John \$x Library \$v Microform catalogs.

650 #0 \$a Microforms \$v Bibliography \$v Catalogs.

Title: Early printed books on microfilm in the Smith Library.

[collection has no specific topic]

650 #0 \$a Early printed books \$v Bibliography \$v Microform catalogs.

610 20 \$a Smith Library \$v Microform catalogs

5. Catalogs of manuscripts. Assign the following combination of headings to catalogs of manuscripts and catalogs of types of manuscript materials:

650 #0 \$a [topic] \$x Manuscripts \$v Catalogs.

[Omit this heading if the manuscript collection has no specific topic.]

650 #0 \$a Manuscripts, [language or nationality, if pertinent] \$z [place where presently located] \$v Catalogs.

(or 650 #0 \$a [type of manuscript material], [place, if pertinent] \$v Catalogs.)

610 X0 \$a [name of the institution] \$v Catalogs.

[If the institution designated is not a library or archive in its own right, and the manuscripts listed represent archival materials, interpose the subdivision –Archives between the name and the subdivision –Catalogs.]

6XX X0 \$a [name of the collection] \$v Catalogs.

[If the manuscript collection represents the archives of an individual person, assign as the name of the collection a heading of the type [name of person]–Archives–Catalogs.]

Note: For classification of catalogs of manuscripts, see F 495, sec. 3.

Chronology H 1367

BACKGROUND: *Chronology is the science of determining the dates and order of events, the arrangement of time in periods, etc., and the actual presentation of events in order of occurrence. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for cataloging works on the science of chronology and works that list events pertaining to a topic, history of a place, etc., in order of occurrence.*

1. The science of arranging time.

a. General. Assign the heading **Chronology** to general works on the science of arranging time in fixed periods and of dating events and epochs.

b. Special. Assign headings of the type **Chronology, [adjectival qualifier]** or **[Adjectival qualifier] chronology** to works on the system of chronology practiced in a particular place, civilization, religion, etc. *Examples:*

650 #0 \$a Chronology, Byzantine.
650 #0 \$a Jewish chronology.
650 #0 \$a Chronology, Mexican.

Exception: To works on the system of arranging time used by Indians, assign phrase headings in uninverted order, for example, **Aztec chronology**.

2. Arrangement of events.

a. General. Assign the heading **Chronology, Historical** to works containing lists of dates and events of world history in order of occurrence.

Subdivide the heading by the free-floating form subdivision **–Charts, diagrams, etc.**, or by **–Tables**, if appropriate for the work.

H 1367 Chronology

2. Arrangement of events. (Continued)

b. Places. Use the free-floating subdivision **–History–Chronology** under names of regions, countries, cities, etc., for works that contain listings of dates and events in the history of that place, for example, **United States–History–Chronology**.

Use the free-floating subdivision **–Chronology** under headings of the type **[place]–History–[period subdivision]** for chronologies limited to a particular period in the history of a place, for example, **Great Britain–History–Victoria, 1837-1901–Chronology**.

c. Topics. Use the free-floating subdivision **–Chronology** or **–History–Chronology** under topical headings to works containing listings of dates in order of occurrence pertaining to the topic.

If the topic can be divided by **–History** (see H 1647), use **–History–Chronology**, for example, **Earthquakes–Mexico–History–Chronology**. If the heading is one that is not divided by **–History**, such as headings for music, art, literature, and inherently historical topics, use **–Chronology** without interposing **–History**, for example, **Popular music–United States–Chronology**; **Arts, American–Chronology**; **English drama–17th century–Chronology**; **Japan–Economic conditions–1945–Chronology**.

Do not use the free-floating subdivision **–Chronology** under a topic if a phrase heading for the concept has been established. *Example:*

```
650 #0 $a Chronology, Historical.  
[not 650 #0 $a World history $v Chronology.]
```

d. Persons. Use the free-floating subdivision **–Chronology** under names of individual persons to works that list by date events in the life of the person, or the dates when a person's works were written or published, as well as discussions of the chronology of such events or works.

e. Corporate bodies. Use the free-floating subdivision **–History–Chronology** under names of individual corporate bodies for works listing events and dates in the history of the organization.

f. Ethnic groups. Use the free-floating subdivision **–History–Chronology** under individual ethnic groups, including Indians, for works listing events and dates in the history of the group.

2. Arrangement of events. (Continued)

g. Sacred works. Use the free-floating subdivision –**Chronology** under uniform titles for sacred works for discussions of the dating and order of occurrence of events mentioned in the sacred work, for example, **Book of Mormon–Chronology**.

3. Examples.

Title: Essays on Jewish chronology.

650 #0 \$a Jewish chronology.

630 00 \$a Bible. \$p O.T. \$x Chronology.

Title: Chronology of the first crusade.

650 #0 \$a Crusades \$y First, 1096-1099 \$v Chronology.

Title: Two hundred years of military medicine.

610 10 \$a United States. \$b Army Medical Department
\$x History \$v Chronology.

650 #0 \$a Medicine, Military \$z United States \$x History
\$v Chronology.

Title: Milestone political events : 1945-1975.

650 #0 \$a World politics \$y 1945- \$v Chronology.

Title: A guide to the published works of Benjamin Constant.

600 10 \$a Constant, Benjamin, \$d 1767-1830 \$v Bibliography.

600 10 \$a Constant, Benjamin, \$d 1767-1830 \$v Chronology.

Title: The pages of rock history.

650 #0 \$a Rock music \$v Chronology.

Title: A chronology of Afro-American history.

650 #0 \$a African Americans \$x History \$v Chronology.

Title: A key to the Mesoamerican reckoning of time.

650 #0 \$a Indian chronology \$z Mexico.

650 #0 \$a Indian chronology \$z Central America.

650 #0 \$a Maya chronology.

650 #0 \$a Aztec chronology.

BACKGROUND: The subject heading **Civilization**, the free-floating subdivision—**Civilization**, and headings for particular types of civilization or special topics in relation to civilization are assigned to works that discuss human cultural advances and aspirations in general or of a particular time, place, or people. Civilization is related closely to other concepts such as culture, history, and social history, but places particular emphasis on cultural advances, including the arts, learning and scholarship, intellectual life, manners and customs, the development and growth of religion, advances in science and technology, etc. Culture is a term used by social scientists to describe a people's whole way of life, whether simple or complex, consisting of learned ways of acting, feeling, and thinking. History is the chronological account of specific events, emphasizing political, diplomatic, military, and economic developments. For instructions on use of the subdivision—**History**, see H 1647. Social history is the history of social problems, policies, movements, institutions, etc., treated collectively.

1. General principle. Because of the close relationship between civilization and history, it is sometimes difficult to decide whether subject headings for history or civilization should be assigned to a particular work. In borderline cases, let the intention of the author and the terminology of the text be the guide in determining which type of heading to assign.

2. Civilization in general. Assign the heading **Civilization** to general works on the concept of civilization. Assign the heading **Civilization–History** to comprehensive works on the history of all civilizations in all time periods. Assign headings of the type **Civilization, [broad time period]**, further subdivided by **–[. . .] century**, if appropriate, to works on the general history of civilization during a particular period of time. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Civilization, Ancient.  
650 #0 $a Civilization, Medieval $y 12th century.  
650 #0 $a Civilization, Modern $y 19th century.
```

3. Types of civilization.

a. Major civilizations. Assign headings of the type **Civilization, [type of civilization]** only to works on the special civilizations of major groups of people not limited to one country. Do not subdivide these headings by place. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Civilization, Greco-Roman.  
650 #0 $a Civilization, Oriental.  
650 #0 $a Civilization, Semitic.
```

H 1370 Civilization

3. *Types of civilization.* (Continued)

b. Major religious groups. Assign headings for the civilizations of the world's major religious groups. *Examples:*

650 #0 \$a Buddhist civilization.
650 #0 \$a Christian civilization.
650 #0 \$a Jews \$x Civilization.

c. Ethnic groups, religious sects, ancient peoples, etc. To works on the civilizations of groups of people not covered by sec. 3.a. or 3.b., assign the heading for the name of the group. Do not establish a heading for the civilization or subdivide the name of the group by **–Civilization**. *Examples:*

650 #0 \$a Indians of North America.
[not 650 #0 \$a Indians of North America \$x Civilization.]

650 #0 \$a Lithuanian Americans.
[not 650 #0 \$a Lithuanian Americans \$x Civilization.]

650 #0 \$a Mennonites.
[not 650 #0 \$a Mennonites \$x Civilization.]

650 #0 \$a Minoans.
[not 650 #0 \$a Civilization, Minoan.]

4. Civilization of particular places. Use the free-floating subdivision **–Civilization** under names of regions, countries, cities, etc., for works on the history of civilization of a particular place. Do not subdivide further by **–History**.

a. Free-floating period subdivisions under the subdivision–Civilization. Use free-floating subdivisions for centuries, in accordance with H 1140, under headings of the type [place]–Civilization.

4. *Civilization of particular places. (Continued)*

b. Other period subdivisions. Establish period subdivisions, if appropriate, under **[place]–Civilization** in situations not covered by the free-floating subdivisions for centuries. Establish these subdivisions at broad levels, usually covering forty years or more, and use them only in situations where files are likely to become large. *Examples:*

```
651 #0 $a Great Britain $x Civilization $y 1945-
651 #0 $a United States $x Civilization $y 1970-
```

c. Civilization of narrow time periods. Headings of the type **[place]–Civilization** and **[place]–History** usually are not assigned to the same work. However, if the work deals primarily with the civilization of a country but is tied closely to the events of a narrow time period, such as the reign or term of office of a ruler or head of state, assign an additional heading to bring out the history of the particular period. *Example:*

Title: The nineteen twenties in Britain.

```
651 #0 $a Great Britain $x Civilization $y 20th
century.
651 #0 $a Great Britain $x History $y George V,
1910-1936.
```

d. Special civilizations of particular places. For works on special civilizations of particular places, assign two headings, as shown in the example below, or, if appropriate, a heading of the type **[place]–Civilization–[...] influences**, as described in sec. 5.a. Do not assign headings of the type **[place]–Civilization, [type of civilization]**. *Example:*

Title: Indian culture in the days of the Buddha.

```
651 #0 $a India $x Civilization $y To 1200.
650 #0 $a Buddhist civilization.
[not 651 #0 $a India $x Civilization, Buddhist.]
```

H 1370 Civilization

5. *Influence.*

a. Influence of one civilization. Assign headings of the type [*name of civilization*]-[...] **influences** or [*place*]-**Civilization**-[...] **influences** to works on the influence of one civilization on another or on civilization as a whole. When establishing such headings, add a 5XX (broader term) field for the country or group of people providing the influence, subdivided by **-Civilization**. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Civilization $x Hungarian influences
551 ## $w g $a Hungary $x Civilization

150 ## $a Islamic civilization $x Greek influences
551 ## $w g $a Greece $x Civilization

151 ## $a United States $x Civilization $x African American
      influences
550 ## $w g $a African Americans

151 ## $a United States $x Civilization $x Spanish
      influences
551 ## $w g $a Spain $x Civilization
```

Do not establish -[...] **influences** under [*city*]-**Civilization**. Assign two headings to cover the concept, if necessary. *Example:*

```
Title: American influences in Paris.
      651 #0 $a Paris (France) $x Civilization.
      651 #0 $a France $x Civilization $x American
      influences.
[not 651 #0 $a Paris (France) $x Civilization
      $x American influences.]
```

b. Influence of several civilizations. Use the free-floating subdivision **-Foreign influences** under [*name of civilization*], [*name of ethnic group*], or under [*place*]- **Civilization** for works on the influence of four or more countries on a place or type of civilization. *Examples:*

```
651 #0 $a United States $x Civilization $x Foreign
      influences.
650 #0 $a Indians of North America $x Foreign influences.
```

BACKGROUND: The subdivision **–Education** is used under classes of persons and ethnic groups for works on the education of these persons or groups, and under monastic and religious orders and Christian denominations for works on education provided by these orders or denominations. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for using this subdivision.

1. Classes of persons and ethnic groups.

a. General. In accordance with H 1100 and H 1103, use the free-floating subdivision **–Education** (*May Subd Geog*) under classes of persons and ethnic groups for works on education provided for these persons or groups.

Under occupational groups and types of employees use **–Education** only for works on the general education of these groups or on education in special subjects not related to their occupation (cf. H 2217, sec. 1.d.). For works on instructing and preparing occupational groups and types of employees for their occupation, use **–Training of** under occupational groups and types of employees (cf. H 2217, sec. 1.a.).

*Note: In order to avoid redundancy, do not use the subdivision **–Education** or **–Education** ([level of education]) under the heading **Students** or under headings for particular groups of students. Instead, use the unsubdivided heading and/or one or more of the following types of headings, as appropriate for the item being cataloged:*

[heading for the broader group of people]–Education
[heading for the appropriate level or type of education]
[heading for the topic]–Study and teaching

Examples:

*Use **College students** (without the subdivision **–Education**) and/or **Education, Higher**, as appropriate. Do not use **College students–Education***

*Use **Chinese American students** (without the subdivision **–Education**) and/or **Chinese Americans–Education**, as appropriate. Do not use **Chinese American students–Education**.*

*use **Law students** (without the subdivision **–Education**) and/or **Law–Study and teaching**, as appropriate. Do not use **Law students–Education**.*

H 1579 Education

1. *Classes of persons and ethnic groups.* (Continued)

b. By topic. Use of the subdivision –**Education**–[*topic*] under classes of persons and ethnic groups for works on education provided in a specific field was discontinued in 1996. Instead, assign a heading for the class of persons or ethnic group divided by –**Education**, and an additional heading of the type [*topic*]–**Study and teaching**. Subdivide by place if appropriate. *Example:*

Title: Teaching science to handicapped youth.

650 #0 \$a Youth with disabilities \$x Education.

650 #0 \$a Science \$x Study and teaching.

c. By educational level. Use the free-floating subdivision –**Education** ([*level of education*]) for works on education provided for these persons or groups at a particular level.

For lists of parenthetical qualifiers, see H 1100 or H 1103.

Subdivide the heading further by place, if appropriate. *Examples:*

650 #0 \$a Hispanic Americans \$x Education (Secondary)
\$z Florida.

650 #0 \$a Blind \$x Education (Higher) \$z United States.

2. Individual persons and literary authors. Use the subdivision –**Knowledge and learning** under names of individual persons, including literary authors, for general works on an individual's education, learning, and scholarship, or the subdivision –**Knowledge**–[*topic*] for works on an individual's knowledge of, or educational background in, a specific topic.

For complete instructions on the use of these subdivisions, see H 1110.

Do not use the subdivision –**Education** under names of individual persons or literary authors.

Education H 1579

3. Monastic and religious orders; Christian denominations. In accordance with H 1186 and H 1187, use the free-floating subdivision –**Education** (*May Subd Geog*) under individual monastic and religious orders, and under Christian denominations, for works on education provided by these orders or denominations.

Under individual monastic and religious orders, use the subdivision –**Education** also for works on education received by members of these orders.

For works on the role of the major *religions* in education, use established phrase headings, for example, **Buddhism and education**, **Hinduism and education**, **Islamic education**, **Christian education**.

4. Examples.

Title: Art not by eye : the previously sighted visually impaired adult in fine arts programs.

650 #0 \$a Blind \$x Education.

650 #0 \$a Art \$x Study and teaching.

Title: What every athlete needs to know about getting a college education.

650 #0 \$a Athletes \$x Education (Higher) \$z United States.

650 #0 \$a Universities and colleges \$z United States.

650 #0 \$a College sports \$z United States.

Title: The administration of American Jesuit colleges in the 20th century.

610 20 \$a Jesuits \$x Education \$z United States \$x History \$y 20th century.

650 #0 \$a Catholic universities and colleges \$z United States \$x Administration \$x History \$y 20th century.

Title: Helping Southern Baptist churches grow.

650 #0 \$a Church growth \$x Southern Baptist Convention.

610 20 \$a Southern Baptist Convention \$x Education.

2. *Explanation of the categories of headings.*

c. *Headings for specific folklore genres. (Continued)*

(1) **General provisions.** To a collection of folkloric texts in one genre, assign the appropriate genre heading, subdividing it by place if appropriate. See the Background statement on p. 1 for further information on the various treatments discussed below.

For works of criticism, subdivide the genre heading, or the genre heading with geographic subdivision, by the subdivision **–History and criticism**, for example, **Tales–Arizona–History and criticism**.

Qualify literary genre headings, that is, headings in the third column above, by language or nationality in accordance with normal literary form heading practice. For translations, subdivide these literary genre headings by the appropriate translation subdivisions, for example, **–Translations** or **–Translations into [. . .]** (cf. H 2220).

Do not qualify headings in the first column above by language or nationality. For the special rules for qualifying musical genre headings, and use of the subdivision **–Texts**, see H 1917. Do not use translation subdivisions under headings in either of the first two columns above.

Guidelines applicable to specific genre headings are given below.

(2) **Fairy tales.** Assign this heading to collections of traditional narratives that typically deal with supernatural beings (such as fairies, ogres, dragons) or supernatural events, and which are often created for the amusement of children. If in doubt as to whether to assign the heading **Tales**, which represents the blanket term for traditional narratives, or **Fairy tales**, prefer **Tales**.

(3) **Folk literature.** Assign this heading to collections containing three or more folklore genres. For collections of two genres, assign the appropriate headings for the genres.

H 1627 Folklore

2. *Explanation of the categories of headings.*

c. Headings for specific folklore genres. (Continued)

(4) **Legends.** Assign this heading to collections of traditional narratives generally regarded by their tellers as true. They may include narratives that are religious (such as those associated with the lives of saints or martyrs, religious objects or beings), supernatural (for example, vampires, werewolves, or ghosts), about individuals (for example, national figures or heroes), or about specific places (such as those emphasizing place name origins, or folk histories).

For legends associated with historical persons known to have existed, assign headings of the type [*name of person*]-**Legends**, for example, **Crockett, Davy, 1786-1836-Legends**.

For texts involving legendary figures, use headings of the type [*name of figure*] (**Legendary character**)-**Legends**, for example, **Pecos Bill (Legendary character)-Legends**.

To medieval legends involving religious objects, assign topical headings with the subdivision -**Legends**, for example, **Grail-Legends** (see sec. 2, above).

Qualify the heading **Legends** by the names of religions to designate the legends of individual religions, for example, **Christian legends; Buddhist legends**.

For legends of American Indian groups, use the subdivision -**Folklore** under individual tribes and major groups. The practice of using the subdivision -**Legends** under groups of Indians was discontinued in 1994. Assign the additional heading **Legends-[place]**.

Subdivide the heading **Legends** or the form subdivision -**Legends** by the subdivision -**History and criticism** for works that discuss the genre.

BACKGROUND: The heading **Islam** denotes the religion of which Muhammad is the prophet. Other connotations of the term **Islam** are (1) the community of believers, (2) their cultural system or civilization, and (3) the countries that share the Islamic religion. These concepts are represented by specific subject headings which are respectively: (1) **Muslims**; (2) **Islamic civilization**; (3) **Islamic countries**. The obsolete forms **Mohammedan** and **Mohammedanism**, and related headings, were changed in LCSH in 1964.

1. Islamic. Use **Islamic** as an adjective indicating "of, relating to, or characteristic of Islam" as a religion, cultural system, or civilization, as well as the group of national political units that share the Islamic religion, for example, **Islamic sects**; **Islamic literature**; **Islamic law**; **Islamic pottery**; **Islamic countries**.

2. Muslim. Use **Muslim** as an adjective whenever the noun modified refers to persons, the believers of Islam, for example, **Muslim converts**; **Muslim saints**; **Muslim women**. The adjective **Muslim** may also be used in other instances when this is warranted by predominant usage.

3. References. When establishing headings qualified by the terms **Islamic** or **Muslim**, add 450 fields with the alternative forms. *Examples:*

150 ## \$a Muslim converts
450 ## \$a Islamic converts

150 ## \$a Islamic shrines
450 ## \$a Muslim shrines

Legal Materials: Systems of Law H 1718

BACKGROUND: Systems of law are represented in LCSH by phrase headings such as *Canon law*, *Jewish law*, *Dakota law*, etc., or by inverted phrase headings such as *Law, Ashanti*; *Law, Bantu*; etc.. Headings for specific topics within a legal system are established in the form [topic] ([qualifier for legal system]), for example, *Domestic relations (Adat law)*, *Criminal law (Roman law)*, etc. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for establishing and assigning headings of this type.

1. Headings for legal systems in general.

a. Establishing new headings. Establish new headings for systems of law, including those of specific ethnic groups, as phrase headings. If the adjectival qualifier designates an ethnic group of the United States or a group of North or South American Indians, establish the heading in straight form. If the adjectival qualifier designates any other ethnic group, establish the heading in inverted form, as specified in H 320, sec. 2. If the heading is established in straight form, provide an inverted UF. If it is established in inverted form, provide a UF in direct order. Also provide an appropriate BT. In the case of headings that designate the system of law of a specific ethnic group, the BT is **Customary law**–[place]. Do not provide for geographic subdivision of the heading. Use the fill character (| - No attempt to code) in field 008/06. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Tlingit law
450 ## $a Law, Tlingit
550 ## $w g $a Customary law $z Alaska
```

```
150 ## $a Law, Kusu
450 ## $a Kusu law
550 ## $w g $a Customary law $z Kenya
```

b. Assigning headings. When assigning these headings to individual bibliographic works, do not divide them geographically, since in most cases they represent legal systems that are limited to a specific place.

*Note: The headings **Adat law**, **Feudal law**, **Islamic law**, and **Law, Primitive**, are exceptions to this rule, and may be divided geographically.*

H 1718 Legal Materials: Systems of Law

1. Headings for legal systems in general.

b. Assigning headings. (Continued)

Examples:

Title: Navajo tribal code.

650 #0 &a Navajo law.

Title: Adat law in Indonesia.

650 #0 \$a Adat law &z Indonesia.

2. Headings for specific topics in legal systems.

a. Establishing new headings. Establish new headings for specific topics or classes of persons within a legal system using the following model:

150 ## \$a [topic or class of persons] (qualifier for legal system, in direct order)
550 ## \$w g \$a [established heading for the legal system]

Note: Do not interpose the subdivision –Law and legislation or –Legal status, laws, etc. between the topic and the qualifier, even if the topic is not inherently legal.
Examples:

150 ## \$a Mass media (Islamic law)
[not 150 ## \$a Mass media \$x Law and legislation (Islamic law)]

150 ## \$a People with disabilities (Jewish law)
[not 150 ## \$a People with disabilities \$x Legal status, laws, etc. (Jewish law)]

Legal Materials: Systems of Law H 1718

2. Headings for specific topics in legal systems.

a. Establishing new headings. (Continued)

For headings that have the qualifier **(Islamic law)**, provide for geographic subdivision by coding field 008/06 **i** (Subdivided geographically - indirect). For headings that have any other system of law as the qualifier, do not provide for geographic subdivision. Use the fill character (| - No attempt to code) in field 008/06. *Examples:*

```
150 ## $a Birth control (Canon law) [coded | in 008/06]
550 ## $w g $a Canon law

150 ## $a Contracts (Frankish law) [coded | in 008/06]
550 ## $w g Law, Frankish

150 ## $a Criminal law (Islamic law) [coded i in 008/06]
550 ## $w g $a Islamic law
```

b. Assigning headings. When assigning headings of this type to individual items being cataloged, do not divide them geographically. When it is necessary and appropriate to do so, bring out specific places by assigning an additional heading or headings.

*Note: Since Islam serves as the basis for the legal systems of many countries, headings that are qualified by **(Islamic law)** are exceptions to this rule, and may be divided geographically.*

Examples:

Title: Traditional family law and change in Tanzania : a study of the Kuria social system.

```
650 #0 $a Domestic relations (Kuria law)
650 #0 $a Domestic relations $z Tanzania.
650 #0 $a Kuria (African people) $z Tanzania $x Social
      life and customs.
```

Title: Muslim criminal law in Indo-Pakistan sub-continent.

```
650 #0 $a Criminal law (Islamic law) $z India.
650 #0 $a Criminal law (Islamic law) $z Pakistan.
```


Contents of Volume Four

Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, etc.

<i>H 1910</i>	Miscellanea
<i>H 1913</i>	Moving Image Genre/Form Headings
<i>H 1916</i>	Museums
<i>H 1916.3</i>	Music: General
<i>H 1916.5</i>	Music: Jazz and Popular Music
<i>H 1917</i>	Music of Ethnic, National, and Religious Groups
<i>H 1917.5</i>	Music Form/Genre Headings: Medium of Performance
<i>H 1918</i>	Musical Instruments
<i>H 1919</i>	Name and Names
<i>H 1919.5</i>	Nationalities
<i>H 1920</i>	Newspapers on Special Topics and Ethnic Newspapers
<i>H 1925</i>	Parks, Reserves, National Monuments, etc.
<i>H 1927</i>	Periodicals
<i>H 1928</i>	Personal Narratives
<i>H 1929</i>	Philosophy
<i>H 1935</i>	Pictorial Works
<i>H 1942</i>	Politics and Government
<i>H 1943.5</i>	Popular Works
<i>H 1945</i>	Postage Stamps on Specific Topics
<i>H 1945.5</i>	Posters
<i>H 1949</i>	Professional Ethics
<i>H 1955</i>	Public Opinion
<i>H 1965</i>	Publishers' Catalogs
<i>H 1969</i>	Quotations and Maxims
<i>H 1969.5</i>	Radio Genre/Form Headings
<i>H 1970</i>	Railroads
<i>H 1975</i>	Readers
<i>H 1980</i>	Reference Books
<i>H 1995</i>	Regimental Histories
<i>H 1996</i>	Relations and Military Relations
<i>H 1997</i>	Religion
<i>H 1998</i>	Religious Aspects of Topics
<i>H 2015</i>	Religious Denominations or Religions as Subdivisions
<i>H 2015.5</i>	Religious Life
<i>H 2016</i>	Religious Life and Customs
<i>H 2020</i>	Research
<i>H 2021</i>	Reviews
<i>H 2032</i>	Sermons
<i>H 2040</i>	Simulation Methods in Special Fields

Contents of Volume Four

Special Topics, Materials, Subdivisions, etc.

<i>H 2055</i>	Social Conditions
<i>H 2057</i>	Social Life and Customs
<i>H 2060</i>	Societies
<i>H 2070</i>	Software and Works about Software
<i>H 2075</i>	Songs and Music
<i>H 2080</i>	Sources
<i>H 2083</i>	Specifications
<i>H 2095</i>	Statistics
<i>H 2098</i>	Streets and Roads
<i>H 2100</i>	Strikes and Lockouts
<i>H 2110</i>	Study and Teaching
<i>H 2145</i>	Supplementary Works
<i>H 2149</i>	Surveys
<i>H 2160</i>	Tables
<i>H 2184</i>	Terms and Phrases
<i>H 2185</i>	Territories and Possessions
<i>H 2186</i>	Testing
<i>H 2187</i>	Textbooks
<i>H 2190</i>	Texts
<i>H 2217</i>	Training
<i>H 2219</i>	Translating
<i>H 2220</i>	Translations
<i>H 2225</i>	Transportation
<i>H 2227</i>	Treaties
<i>H 2228</i>	Trials
<i>H 2230</i>	Visual Materials and Non-Music Sound Recordings
<i>H 2232</i>	Vocational Guidance
<i>H 2400</i>	Yearbooks

Glossary

<i>Appendix A</i>	Abbreviations
<i>Appendix B</i>	Capitalization
<i>Appendix C</i>	Diacritics and Special Characters
<i>Appendix D</i>	Punctuation
<i>Appendix E</i>	Geographic Area Codes

Update Information

Index

Museums H 1916

6. Assigning additional headings. To works about museums assign several headings, if appropriate, to bring out the most important topics discussed. *Examples:*

Title: Oriental carpets in the Philadelphia Museum of Art.

650 #0 \$a Rugs, Oriental \$v Catalogs.
650 #0 \$a Rugs \$z Pennsylvania \$z Philadelphia \$v Catalogs.
610 20 \$a Philadelphia Museum of Art \$v Catalogs.

Title: Ancient and Near Eastern glass.

650 #0 \$a Glassware, Ancient \$v Catalogs.
650 #0 \$a Islamic glassware \$z Middle East \$v Catalogs.
650 #0 \$a Glassware \$z Ohio \$z Toledo \$v Catalogs.
610 20 \$a Toledo Museum of Art \$v Catalogs.

Title: The design of educational exhibits.

650 #0 \$a Museums \$x Educational aspects.
650 #0 \$a Museum exhibits.

Title: Reconstructing archaeology.

650 #0 \$a Archaeology \$x Philosophy.
650 #0 \$a Social archaeology.
650 #0 \$a Material culture.
650 #0 \$a Archaeological museums and collections \$z Great Britain.
650 #0 \$a Archaeological museums and collections.

Personal Narratives H 1928

BACKGROUND: The subdivision **–Personal narratives** is a free-floating form subdivision used under names of events and wars for collective or individual eyewitness reports and/or autobiographical accounts of these events and wars. Prior to 1977, the subdivision was used more widely under classes of persons, types of activities, and diseases. Those uses were replaced by the subdivision **–Biography** under classes of persons. For instructions on assigning headings to diaries and journals, see H 1538. For instructions on assigning headings to personal correspondence, see H 1480.

1. General rule. Use the subdivision **–Personal narratives** under names of individual events or wars.

If the work being cataloged covers a particular event such as a battle which is part of a larger conflict, assign the heading for the specific event subdivided by **–Personal narratives**.

2. National or ethnic qualifier. When used under names of wars, battles, etc., qualify the subdivision **–Personal narratives** by a national or ethnic qualifier to bring out the nationality or ethnic background of the narrator(s) of the account(s), for example, **World War, 1939-1945–Personal narratives, American**. Omit the national or ethnic qualifier if it would cause redundancy within the heading. *Example:*

```
651 #0 $a United States $x History $y Revolution, 1775-1783
      $v Personal narratives.
```

```
651 #0 $a United States $x History $y Revolution, 1775-1983
      $v Personal narratives, British.
```

```
[not 651 #0 $a United States $x History $y Revolution, 1995-1783
      $v Personal narratives, American.]
```

Under names of events not associated with a war or military conflict, omit the national or ethnic qualifier.

H 1928 Personal Narratives

3. *Assignment of subject headings.*

a. Name heading for the person. For individual personal narratives, assign the name of the author of the work as a subject heading.

b. [Class of persons]–Biography. If an individual personal narrative contains at least 50% autobiographical information, treat it as a biography following the provisions of H 1330. If the work is an eyewitness report containing less than 50% autobiographical details, do not treat it as a biography.

c. Other subject headings. Assign other subject headings as appropriate to the work being cataloged.

4. *Order of headings.*

a. Narratives that include personal information about the author. If an individual personal narrative contains a significant amount of personal information regarding the author, assign the name of the author as the first subject heading.

b. Narratives with little personal information about the author. If the narrative is essentially an eyewitness account of what happened with little personal information about the author, assign the name of the war or event as the first subject heading; assign the name of the author as an additional subject heading.

5. MARC 21 biography coding. Assign code **a**, **c**, or **d**, as appropriate in field 008/34 (the box labeled **Biography** on the 008 input screen in the LC ILS).

Personal Narratives H 1928

6. Examples.

Title: Few eggs and no oranges.

[diary about Londoners during World War II]

600 10 \$a [name of author] \$v Diaries.

650 #0 \$a World War, 1939-1945 \$v Personal narratives,
British.

651 #0 \$a London (England) \$v Biography.

Title: A rumor of war.

600 10 \$a [name of author]

650 #0 \$a Vietnam War, 1961-1975 \$v Personal narratives,
American.

650 #0 \$a Soldiers \$z United States \$v Biography.

610 10 \$a United States. \$b Marine Corps \$v Biography.

Title: Adventure in diplomacy : our French dilemma.

650 #0 \$a World War, 1939-1945 \$z Africa, North.

650 #0 \$a World War, 1939-1945 \$x Diplomatic history.

600 10 \$a [name of author]

650 #0 \$a World War, 1939-1945 \$v Personal narratives,
American.

Title: The year of the buzz bomb; a journal of London, 1944.

651 #0 \$a London (England) \$x History \$y Bombardment, 1944
\$v Personal narratives, American.

600 10 \$a [name of author] \$v Diaries.

650 #0 \$a World War, 1939-1945 \$z England \$z London.

650 #0 \$a Guided missiles \$x History.

Philosophy H 1929

BACKGROUND: The free-floating subdivision –**Philosophy** is used under topical headings and names of individual persons, except philosophers. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for assigning the subdivision –**Philosophy**.

1. Disciplines. Assign the free-floating subdivision –**Philosophy** under fields of knowledge for works on the basic theory or principles of those disciplines, for example, **Science– Philosophy**.

Do not assign headings of this type to works on special subtopics within the discipline of philosophy. Use instead headings of the type [**topic**] (**Philosophy**) for these topics, for example, **Meaning (Philosophy)**.

2. Nationality, ethnic, and religious groups. Assign a heading of the type **Philosophy, [adjectival qualifier]** for works on the philosophy developed by nationality and ethnic groups. *Examples:*

Philosophy, American
Philosophy, Igbo

Assign a heading of the type [**Religion**] **philosophy** for works on the philosophy developed by religious groups. *Examples:*

Buddhist philosophy
Hindu philosophy

Note: Headings of the type **Philosophy, [religious qualifier]** were revised in 2009 and are now established in uninverted form.

Do not assign a heading of the type [**name of group**]–**Philosophy** for these groups of people. The subdivision –**Philosophy** was discontinued under groups of Indians in 1994.

For ethnic groups in the United States and Indian groups, headings are established in uninverted form, for example, **African American philosophy**; **Hopi philosophy**.

H 1929 Philosophy

3. Individual persons. Assign the free-floating subdivision –**Philosophy** under names of individual persons for works on the individual's own philosophy.

Do not, however, use the subdivision –**Philosophy** under names of individual philosophers. For general works on the thought of a philosopher, assign the name heading for the person without subdivision.

Politics and Government H 1942

3. Practical politics. Assign the heading **Politics, Practical** (*May Subd Geog*) to works on practical methods used in political campaigns, political party work, etc.

To works discussing the use of practical political methods in a particular place, assign a heading to bring out the place. Usually this will be a heading of the type **[place]–Politics and government**.

4. Political participation.

a. General. Assign the heading **Political participation** (*May Subd Geog*) to general works on the participation of citizens in the political process.

b. Classes of persons, organizations, etc. Assign the free-floating subdivision **–Political activity** (*May Subd Geog*) under classes of persons, types of corporate bodies, names of individual corporate bodies, persons, families, individual military services, and Christian denominations for works on the political participation of these persons or organizations.
Example:

Title: Banners unfurled : higher education in Pakistan.

650 #0 \$a Education, Higher \$z Pakistan.

650 #0 \$a College students \$x Political activity
\$z Pakistan.

c. By subject. Assign the free-floating subdivision **–Citizen participation** under topical headings for works on the participation of citizens in carrying out an activity.

Do not assign this subdivision under headings for broad disciplines. Use the subdivision under headings for the specific activity in which citizens participate and share in policy decisions.

H 1942 Politics and Government

5. Political aspects of nonpolitical topics. Assign the free-floating subdivision –**Political aspects** (*May Subd Geog*) under topical headings for works on the political dimensions or implications of nonpolitical topics. *Example:*

Title: Political dynamics of direct foreign investment.

650 #0 \$a Investments, Foreign \$x Political aspects.

6. Special topics. Assign appropriate specific headings to works on special political topics. *Examples:*

Campaign funds
Lobbying
Local government
Political parties
Pressure groups
Right and left (Political science)
Voter registration

7. Assigning additional headings. Works on political topics are usually multifaceted, requiring an array of headings to bring out the important aspects of the material. Assign several headings, if appropriate, to cover major topics discussed in a work. In most instances, one of these should be a heading of the type [*place*]-**Politics and government**. *Examples:*

Title: Who's running America?

650 #0 \$a Elite (Social sciences) \$z United States.

650 #0 \$a Power (Social sciences)

650 #0 \$a Leadership.

651 #0 \$a United States \$x Politics and government
\$y 1993-2001.

Title: Global collective security in the 1980s.

650 #0 \$a National security.

650 #0 \$a World politics \$y 1975-1985.

Politics and Government H 1942

7. Assigning additional headings. Examples: (Continued)

Title: Burke and the nature of politics.

600 10 \$a Burke, Edmund, \$d 1729?-1797.

651 #0 \$a Great Britain \$x Politics and government \$y 1760-1820.

Title: Running for office : how women can win.

650 #0 \$a Political campaigns \$z United States.

650 #0 \$a Politics, Practical \$z United States.

650 #0 \$a Women \$x Political activity \$z United States.

651 #0 \$a United States \$x Politics and government \$y 1989-

Title: Democracy and empire : Britain, 1865-1914.

651 #0 \$a Great Britain \$x Politics and government \$y 1837-1901.

651 #0 \$a Great Britain \$x Politics and government \$y 1901-1936.

Title: Drama in the People's Republic of China.

650 #0 \$a Theater \$z China \$x History \$y 20th century.

650 #0 \$a Chinese drama \$y 20th century \$x History and criticism.

650 #0 \$a Theater \$x Political aspects \$z China.

650 #0 \$a Theater and society \$z China.

Title: Priests, sisters, and political office in the United States.

610 20 \$a Catholic Church \$x Clergy \$x Political activity \$z United States \$x History \$y 20th century.

650 #0 \$a Nuns \$x Political activity \$z United States \$x History \$y 20th century.

650 #0 \$a Church and state \$z United States \$x History \$y 20th century.

650 #0 \$a Church and state \$x Catholic Church \$x History \$y 20th century.

651 #0 \$a United States \$x Politics and government \$y 1989-

Title: Wake us when it's over : presidential politics of 1984.

650 #0 \$a Presidents \$z United States \$x Election \$y 1984.

651 #0 \$a United States \$x Politics and government \$y 1981-1989.

Religious Aspects of Topics H 1998

2. –*Religious aspects*.

b. Establishing the subdivision in the subject authority file. (Continued)

If necessary for the work being cataloged or for existing MARC records, also establish either or both of the following multiple subdivisions:

150 ## \$a [topic] \$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism,
[Christianity, etc.]

*[The above multiple subdivision authorizes the free-floating usage of
religions or sects after -Religious aspects.]*

150 ## \$a [topic] \$x Religious aspects \$x Baptists,
[Catholic Church, etc.]

*[The above multiple subdivision authorizes the free-floating usage of
Christian denominations after -Religious aspects.]*

Once these multiple subdivisions have been established, the subdivision –**Religious aspects** may be further subdivided on a free-floating basis by names of particular religions or denominations, if appropriate for the work. *Examples:*

650 #0 \$a Divorce \$x Religious aspects \$x Christianity.
650 #0 \$a Sports \$x Religious aspects \$x Episcopal Church.
650 #0 \$a Gratitude \$x Religious aspects \$x Buddhism.

c. Subdividing by other subdivisions. Treat headings of the type [topic]–**Religious aspects** as religious headings. If required for the work being cataloged, further subdivide these headings by the subdivisions provided for use under religious topics in H 1095, such as –**Comparative studies**; –**History of doctrines**; –**Meditations**.

d. Assignment of additional headings. When assigning a heading of the type [topic]–**Religious aspects**–[name of religion or denomination], assign as an additional heading the name of the religion or denomination with appropriate topical subdivision, if any (cf. H 2015). *Example:*

Title: Catholic theology pertinent to women's lib.

650 #0 \$a Feminism \$ x Religious aspects \$x Catholic
Church.

610 20 \$a Catholic Church \$x Doctrines.

H 1998 Religious Aspects of Topics

3. –**Mythology**. Use the free-floating subdivision –**Mythology** (*May Subd Geog*) under non-religious or non-ethical topics to designate works that discuss the topic as a theme in mythology.

Example:

650 #0 \$a Rice \$x Mythology

Assign headings subdivided by –**Mythology** rather than –**Religious aspects** to works that discuss the religious implications of a particular theme in mythology. If, however, it is necessary to designate a particular religion or denomination, do so by assigning the additional heading [*topic*]–**Religious aspects**–[*name of religion or denomination*]. If the subdivision –**Religious aspects** has not yet been established under the topic, establish it, as well as the required multiple subdivision(s), in order to assign this heading.

Bring out the particular mythology discussed by assigning additional headings of the type **Mythology, Greek; Jewish mythology**.

4. –**Moral and ethical aspects**. Use the free-floating subdivision –**Moral and ethical aspects** (*May Subd Geog*) under non-religious or non-ethical topics to designate works that discuss moral and/or ethical questions regarding the topic, for example, **Dancing–Moral and ethical aspects** (*May Subd Geog*); **Terminal care–Moral and ethical aspects** (*May Subd Geog*).

If a work also discusses the topic from the standpoint of a particular religion or denomination, assign an additional heading of the type [*topic*]–**Religious aspects**–[*religion or denomination*]. If the subdivision –**Religious aspects** has not yet been established under the topic, establish it, as well as the required multiple subdivision(s), in order to assign this heading. *Example:*

Title: The birth control encyclical.

650 #0 \$a Birth control \$x Moral and ethical aspects.

650 #0 \$a Birth control \$x Religious aspects \$x Catholic Church.

610 20 \$a Catholic Church \$x Doctrines.

3. *Other religions.*

a. General collections. Assign a phrase heading of the type [*religion*] **sermons** to collections of sermons from a religion other than Christianity by two or more authors not limited to one language, for example, **Buddhist sermons; Jewish sermons**.

b. By language. Establish a phrase heading with language qualifier for individual sermons or collections of sermons of a particular religion in one language, for example, **Buddhist sermons, Korean; Islamic sermons, Indonesian**.

c. By sect. In accordance with H 1185, assign a heading of the type [*name of sect*]**Sermons** to individual sermons or collections of sermons by authors from that sect.

Do not add a language qualifier to headings of this type. Assign an additional heading to bring out the language, as indicated in sec. 3.b.

d. By topic. To individual sermons or collections of sermons on a topic, assign a heading for the topic subdivided by the free-floating form subdivision **Sermons**, for example, **Joy-Religious aspects-Hinduism-Sermons**.

e. By occasion. Assign a phrase heading for an individual sermon or collection of sermons delivered on a special occasion or prepared for a specific audience, for example, **Jewish occasional sermons; Rosh ha-Shanah sermons**.

4. *Assigning an array of headings.* To individual sermons or collections of sermons, assign an array of headings to bring out the religion, denomination, language, topic, and occasion of the sermons. *Examples:*

Title: *Wesley's standard sermons.*

650 #0 \$a Methodist Church \$v Sermons.

650 #0 \$a Sermons, English.

H 2032 Sermons

4. Assigning an array of headings.

Examples: (Continued)

Title: Jewish funeral sermons.

650 #0 \$a Jewish funeral sermons.
650 #0 \$a Jewish sermons, Hebrew.

Title: Women and the word.

650 #0 \$a Sermons, American \$x Women authors.

Title: Thoughts for special occasions and days.

650 #0 \$a Jewish occasional sermons.
650 #0 \$a Jewish sermons, American.

Title: Jesus never said everyone was lovable.

650 #0 \$a Love \$x Religious aspects \$x Christianity
\$v Sermons.
650 #0 \$a Methodist Church \$v Sermons.
650 #0 \$a Sermons, American.

Title: Sermons on the prophecies of Micah.

630 00 \$a Bible. \$p O.T. \$p Micah \$v Sermons.
610 20 \$a United Church of Canada \$v Sermons.
650 #0 \$a Sermons, English \$z Canada.

Title: Marian sermons.

600 00 \$a Mary, \$c Blessed Virgin, Saint \$v Sermons.
610 20 \$a Catholic Church \$v Sermons.
650 #0 \$a Sermons, American.

5. History and criticism. Assign the free-floating subdivision –**History and criticism** under any type of heading or subdivision for sermons to works that critically evaluate the style and/or the contents of individual or collections of sermons, for example, **Sermons, French–History and criticism**.

Do not assign this type of heading to works on methods of writing and delivering sermons. To these works assign the appropriate heading for preaching, for example, **Preaching; Buddhist preaching; Islamic preaching; Methodist preaching**.

BACKGROUND: The subdivisions **–Training of** and **–In-service training** are assigned under occupational groups and types of employees, including teachers and types of teachers, to works on the history and methods of instructing these groups in order to prepare them for employment or to maintain and upgrade their skills. The subdivision **–Teacher training**, formerly used under topical headings, was removed from the free-floating list in 1988. It is being retained only under **Religious education** and headings for types of religious education. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for assigning the subdivisions **–Training of** and **–In-service training** under occupational groups and types of employees and for assigning the subdivision **–Teacher training** under **Religious education** and types of religious education.

1. **–Training of.**

a. General. Assign the free-floating subdivision **–Training of** (*May Subd Geog*) under headings for occupational groups and types of employees to works on the history and/or methods of instructing persons to prepare them for their occupation.

b. Language and literature teachers. Assign the free-floating subdivision **–Training of** (*May Subd Geog*) under the headings **Language teachers**, **Language arts teachers**, and headings for types of teachers of language and literature. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a English teachers $x Training of $z Southern  
States.  
650 #0 $a French teachers $x Training of $z Canada.
```

For works on the training of teachers who provide language instruction to foreign speakers, assign an additional heading of the type [...] **language–Study and teaching–Foreign speakers**.

c. Other teachers. Use the free-floating subdivision **–Training of** (*May Subd Geog*) under **Teachers** and under headings for specific types of teachers to works on the history and/or methods of instructing teachers to prepare them for their work. *Examples:*

```
650 #0 $a Mathematics teachers $x Training of $z France.  
650 #0 $a Science teachers $x Training of $z New Jersey.
```

The practice of assigning **–Teacher training** as a free-floating subdivision under topical headings has been discontinued.

H 2217 Training

1. –*Training of.* (Continued)

d. –Training of vs. –Education. Assign the subdivision –**Education** (*May Subd Geog*) as a free-floating subdivision under occupational groups and types of employees only to works on the general education of these groups or education on special subjects not related to their occupation (cf. H 1579). *Example:*

Title: Political education in the Southern Farmers' Alliance, 1877-1900.

610 20 \$a National Farmers' Alliance and Industrial
Union \$x History.
650 #0 \$a Farmers \$x Political activity \$z Southern
States \$x History \$y 19th century.
650 #0 \$a Farmers \$x Education \$z Southern States
\$x History \$y 19th century.
650 #0 \$a Civics \$x Study and teaching \$z Southern
States \$x History \$y 19th century.
650 #0 \$a Populism \$z Southern States \$x History
\$y 19th century.

2. –*In-service training.*

a. General. Assign the heading **Employees–Training of** (*May Subd Geog*) to general works on training given to employees on the job to help them maintain and upgrade their skills.

b. Special. Assign the free-floating subdivision –**In-service training** (*May Subd Geog*) under occupational groups and types of employees to works on the history and/or methods of providing training for these groups on the job, for example, **College teachers–In-service training–United States**.

3. –Teacher training. Assign the subdivision –**Teacher training** (*May Subd Geog*) under **Religious education** and headings for particular types of religious education to works on the history and methods of training paid employees or volunteers to provide religious instruction in Sunday schools, schools, adult religious education programs, etc.

This subdivision is not free-floating and must be established in the subject authority file for each use.

Glossary

Library of Congress Subject Headings. The printed list of headings produced from the *subject authority file* maintained by the Library of Congress and published annually. The term is frequently abbreviated as **LCSH** and is sometimes used interchangeably with the term *subject authority file*.

Local subdivision, *see* **Geographic subdivision**

Name authority file. A file containing individual *name authority records*. As used in this manual, this term refers specifically to the name authority file created and maintained by the Library of Congress with contributions from participating libraries.

Name authority record. An *authority record* for a *name heading*.

Name heading. A heading that is a personal name, corporate name, meeting name, uniform title, or jurisdictional name.

Narrower term reference. A reference to a *subject heading* at a lower level in a hierarchy than the term referred from. Narrower term references do not appear in *subject authority records*, but are generated by automated systems as the reciprocals of *broader term references*.

NT, *see* **Narrower term reference**

Parenthetical qualifier. A word or phrase placed in parentheses after a heading either to distinguish between two different meanings of an identical term or to clarify the meaning of the heading, as in the subject headings **Plates (Engineering)**; **Plates (Tableware)**; **BASIC (Computer program language)**; **Adonis (Greek deity)**.

Period subdivision, *see* **Chronological subdivision**

Place subdivision, *see* **Geographic subdivision**

Proposal. A suggested new subject heading or a suggested change to an existing heading, submitted by a cataloger in the form of a subject authority proposal record ("sp" record) or a printout of an existing *subject authority record* marked up with proposed changes, for consideration at the weekly subject headings editorial meeting of the Policy and Standards Division, which is responsible for overall development of the Library of Congress *subject authority file*.

Qualifier, Adjectival, *see* **Adjectival qualifier**

Glossary

Qualifier, Geographic, *see* **Geographic qualifier**

Qualifier, Parenthetical, *see* **Parenthetical qualifier**

Reference source. An authoritative published work or other source of information consulted to determine the appropriate terminology to be used in establishing a *subject heading* and creating an appropriate structure of cross-references to and from the heading.

Related term reference. A reference from one *subject heading* to another subject heading that is in a different hierarchy. Related term references appear in 5XX fields in *subject authority records*, and are identifiable by the presence of the value **n** in the first character position of the \$w control subfield.

RT, *see* **Related term reference**

Scope note. A note associated with a *subject heading* that provides information about the heading such as its definition, application, or relationship to other headings, in order to enable catalogers to use the heading consistently and users to determine what type of material may be found under the heading. Scope notes appear in 680 fields in *subject authority records*.

See also reference. A cross-reference leading from one valid heading to another. In the Library of Congress *subject authority file*, a see also reference is in the form of a *broader term reference* (which can generate a *narrower term reference* as its reciprocal), or a *general see also reference*.

See reference, *see* **Use reference**

Straight heading. A heading established in direct, natural language word order. See also *Inverted heading*.

String. A term used to refer to the combination of a subject heading and one or more subdivisions. In the context of the MARC 21 format, a string is a 6XX field that has at least one \$v, \$x, \$y, or \$z subfield in addition to the \$a subfield.

Subdivision. The portion of a subject heading *string* that appears in a \$v, \$x, \$y, or \$z subfield of the 6XX field and that is used to identify a specific aspect of the main *subject heading*, such as form, subtopic, time period, or place, in connection with the bibliographic work to which it is assigned. See also *Chronological subdivision*, *Form subdivision*, *Geographic subdivision*, and *Topical subdivision*.

Appendix E: Geographic Area Codes

BACKGROUND: *MARC Geographic Area Codes (GACs) provide for broad retrieval of cataloging records by geographic areas of interest. Codes exist for countries, regions, some first order political divisions, mountain ranges, bodies of water, etc. GACs are selected on the basis of the headings assigned to the work being cataloged. Codes are required for headings that imply geographic orientation, as well as for those that are explicitly geographical. Codes are entered by catalogers in the 043 field. This instruction sheet provides guidelines for assigning GACs. The complete list of GACs is published in the **MARC Code List for Geographic Areas**.*

Note: Until 2010, the Library of Congress assigned a maximum of three GACs to any one bibliographic record. In 2010, that restriction was lifted. There is currently no limit on the number of GACs that may be assigned to a record.

1. General rule. Bring out by code the geographic areas that appear or are implied in the headings assigned to the work being cataloged. If a heading is tagged 651 or contains a geographic subdivision (a \$z subfield), assign a code. Assign codes for ethnic groups, nationalities, civilizations, topics qualified by ethnic groups or nationalities, individual named entities, including corporate bodies, and events.

Note: Although there is no limit on the number of codes that may be assigned to any individual bibliographic record, if a large number of codes would be required to cover all of the places that the subject headings encompass, consider assigning one or more GACs at a broader level that would include all of the individual places.

	<i>Code for:</i>
Japan–Commerce	Japan
Education–France	France
Country music	United States
[<i>UF Country music–United States</i>]	
Afro-Americans	United States
British	Great Britain
Civilization, Germanic	Europe
University of Illinois	Illinois
Expo 67 (Montréal, Québec)	Québec (Province)

Appendix E: Geographic Area Codes

2. Coding for local entities. Assign the appropriate code for the country or the first order political division for a work about a local geographic feature, region, or jurisdiction that is located within a country or first order political division.

	<i>Code for:</i>
Rabat (Morocco)	Morocco
Bloke Plateau (Slovenia)	Slovenia
Children–New York (N.Y.)	New York (State)
Education–Washington (State)– Seattle	Washington (State)
Architecture–Australia– Sydney (N.S.W.)	New South Wales
Vladivostok (R.S.F.S.R.)	Russia (Federation)

Note: Separate codes for the first order divisions of the following countries have been provided: Australia, Canada, China, Great Britain, and the United States.

*Codes have also been provided for some individual regions within Russia. For any work dealing with one of these Russian regions as a whole, assign the code indicated. For an entity, such as a city, located within one of these regions, assign the code for Russia (Federation) instead. For example, for a work about Siberia as a whole, assign **e-urs**, but for a work about the city of Irkutsk, located in Siberia, assign **e-ru**.*

3. Regions, valleys, watersheds, etc. For a region, valley, watershed, etc., associated with a particular feature for which a code exists, assign the code for the corresponding feature.

	<i>Code for:</i>
Great Lakes Region	Great Lakes
Mississippi River Valley	Mississippi River

4. Entities located in several countries. Code for each country or for the larger geographic area if appropriate.

	<i>Code for:</i>
Euphrates River	Turkey; Iraq; Syria
European Economic Community countries	Europe

Appendix E: Geographic Area Codes

4. *Entities located in several countries.* (Continued)

If an entity is located in several first order political divisions, for countries having separate codes for political divisions, apply the above rule at the division level.

Yellowstone River	<i>Code for:</i>
Colorado River	Wyoming; North Dakota; Montana
	West (U.S.)

5. *Historic jurisdictions, empires, kingdoms, etc.* Assign codes that correspond to modern-day jurisdictions or areas.

Byzantine Empire	<i>Code for:</i>
Rome	Mediterranean Region
Confederate States of America	Europe; Africa, North; Middle East
	Southern States

Note: These examples illustrate coding for the greatest territorial extent of these entities. For works that discuss a jurisdiction during a period when its territory was more limited and for works focusing on a specific location within a historical jurisdiction, assign the appropriate code for the particular place.

6. *Parts of regions.* If a work discusses only part of a large geographic region for which a code exists, code for both the region and the locality if subject headings for both are assigned. *Example:*

*Title: Water resource problems and priorities in the Appalachian
region counties of North Carolina.*

650 0 \$a Water-supply \$z Appalachian Region.

650 0 \$a Water-supply \$z North Carolina.

Code for: Appalachian Region; North Carolina

If a single code does not exist specifically for the region, code only for the part of the region covered by the work being cataloged.

Appendix E: Geographic Area Codes

7. *Ethnic groups, nationalities, civilizations, etc.* Assign codes for the jurisdictions or areas where they are located. For an individual element in the population, assign a code only for the present locality, not the place of origin, as long as the people are citizens or permanent residents.

Ashantis (African people)	<i>Code for:</i> Ghana; Togo; Ivory Coast
Hopi Indians	Arizona
Indians of North America— Alaska	Alaska
British	Great Britain
Japanese Americans—Ohio	Ohio
African Americans	United States
Civilization, Germanic	Europe

Foreign members of a population. Assign codes for both the place of origin and current location of peoples who are in an area other than their permanent homeland, including travelers, temporary residents, aliens, and foreign students.

British—United States	<i>Code for:</i> Great Britain; United States
African American students—France	United States; France
Americans—France [as unnaturalized expatriates]	United States; France

Influence of one nation on another. For the impact of one place on another, code for both.

Great Britain—Colonies— America	<i>Code for:</i> Great Britain; America
Japan—Intellectual life— American influences	Japan; United States

Appendix E: Geographic Area Codes

7. *Ethnic groups, nationalities, civilizations, etc. (Continued)*

Special topics modified by names of ethnic groups or nationalities. Code for the ethnic group or nationality. If the work is limited to a specific locality, code for the locality only. If it deals with an area outside of the area normally associated with the people, code for both places.

Technical assistance, American	<i>Code for:</i> United States
African American authors	United States
Art, English	Great Britain
Poets, American–Ohio	Ohio
Pottery, Chinese–Canada	China; Canada

8. ***Language.*** Code for the location of a language if the work deals with geographic aspects of the language.

French language–Dialects [<i>a work on the distribution of the dialects of France</i>]	<i>Code for:</i> France
French language–Dialects– Belgium	Belgium
Hopi language [<i>a distribution study</i>]	Arizona

Assign no code to grammars, textbooks for learning the language, histories of linguistic changes such as changes in phonology, etc.

Assign no code if the heading assigned is intended to bring out the language of a publication, e.g.

Sermons, German
English poetry
Buddhism–Prayer-books and devotions–English

Appendix E: Geographic Area Codes

9. Literature. Assign no code to the *texts* of belles lettres or folk literature unless a subject heading that has a geographic element is assigned to the work. Assign GACs, however, to works that *discuss* particular literatures.

American poetry–California	<i>Code for:</i> California
American poetry–History and criticism	United States
United States–History–War of 1812–Fiction	United States
Folk poetry, Tamil–Burma	Burma
Canadian drama	[no code]

10. Named entities. Code for the location of individual named entities, including corporate bodies (i.e. entities tagged 610 in bibliographic records), buildings and structures, roads, waterways, railroads, monuments, camps, parks, gardens, etc. For government agencies, code for the jurisdictions the agencies serve.

University of Illinois	<i>Code for:</i> Illinois
Folger Shakespeare Library	Washington (D.C.)
Library of Congress	Washington (D.C.)
American Water Works Association	United States
New England Library Association	New England
Great Atlantic & Pacific Tea Co.	United States
Old Manse (Concord, Mass.)	Massachusetts
Brooklyn Bridge (New York, N.Y.)	New York (State)
Southern Pacific Railroad	United States
Yellowstone National Park	Idaho; Montana; Wyoming
United States. Dept. of Agriculture	United States
Baltimore County Public Schools	Maryland
Presbyterian Church (U.S.A.)	United States

Appendix E: Geographic Area Codes

11. Events, exhibitions, movements, etc. Assign a code for the location of the occurrence. Do not code for participating countries unless the country is brought out in a heading assigned to the work being cataloged..

	<i>Code for:</i>
Dunkerque (France), Battle of, 1940	France
World War, 1914-1918	Europe
World War, 1939-1945	[no code]
World War, 1939-1945– Germany	Germany
Reformation–Germany	Germany
Reformation	Europe
United States–History– War of 1812	United States
Maryland–History– War of 1812	Maryland
Canadian Grand Prix Race	Canada
Expo 67 (Montréal, Québec)	Québec (Province)
Occitan movement	France
United States–History– Revolution, 1775-1783	United States

12. Biography and genealogy. Assign codes to any work of biography, individual or collective, and to any work of genealogy, to which headings covered by the general rule are assigned.

Do not assign a code to genealogical works to which the only heading assigned is a family name.

13. Specific types of material and specific places. Many individual instruction sheets in this manual include information about assigning GACs when cataloging either specific types of material or material about specific places. These instruction sheets are listed below.

Specific types of material

- Core level records. See H 170, sec. 4
- Genealogical works. See H 1631, sec. 4
- Microforms. See H 1893, sec. 3
- Jazz; Popular music. See H 1916.5, sec. 2.d.
- Non-music sound recordings; Visual materials. See H 2230, sec. 7

Appendix E: Geographic Area Codes

13. Specific types of material and specific places. (Continued)

Specific places

- Bosnia and Hercegovina; Croatia; Former Yugoslav Republics; Kosovo; Macedonia; Montenegro; Serbia; Serbia and Montenegro; Slovenia; Yugoslavia. See H 1055, sec. 5
- Congo. See H 928, sec. 5
- Former Soviet Republics; Soviet Union. See H 1023, sec. 6
- Gaza Strip; Golan Heights; Jerusalem; Palestine; West Bank. See H 980, sec. 5
- Hong Kong. See H 978, sec. 5
- Vatican City. See H 1045, sec. 4

INDEX

Page numbers are in parentheses following the number of the instruction sheet. Subject headings and subdivisions are displayed in bold type. Where multiple references are provided under a topic, the primary reference, if any, is displayed in bold type. References to lists of free-floating subdivisions in H 1095 - H 1200 are not included.

043 field for geographic area codes

SEE Geographic area codes

653 field for uncontrolled subject terms: H 160

781 field for geographic subdivision form: H 200 (8), H 830 (2), H 835, H 836

- A -

AACR2 name headings: H 405 (3-4), H 430 (1-2)

 Extinct cities: H 715 (1)

Abbeys

 Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Abbreviations

 Capitalization of: Appendix B (5)

 Geographic qualifiers: H 810 (3, 8-11)

 Geographic subject headings: H 690 (6)

 Spaces within: Appendix D (1-2)

 Used as subject headings: Appendix A, H 373 (3)

Ability: H 2186 (1-2)

Ability testing as a subdivision: H 2186 (2)

Abstracting and indexing as a subdivision: H 1205 (2), H 1670 (3)

Abstracts: H 1205

 Distinguished from annotated bibliographies: H 1205 (2)

Abstracts as a subdivision: H 1205

 Not used under –**Congresses**: H 1460

Academies

 Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Accidents

 Formulating headings for specific accidents: H 1592

Accompaniment

 Instrumental music headings: H 250 (8), H 1917.5 (3, 10, 11, 15, 18-22)

 Vocal music headings: H 250 (6, 8), H 1917.5 (5, 11, 13, 15, 18-22, 36-37)

Accounting as a subdivision: H 1624 (2)

Acquisition of government publications: H 1643

Acronyms

Establishing as subject headings: Appendix A (2)

UF references: H 373 (2)

Plurals: Appendix A (3)

Usage of the subject heading **Acronyms**: H 1206.5

Acronyms as a subdivision: H 1206.5

Activity programs: H 2110 (4)

Acts, Legislative: H 1715

Adaptations, Film: H 2230 (3)

Added entries, Partial title

SEE Partial title added entries

Addenda: H 2145

Addresses, essays, lectures as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 1210

Addresses, Street

Buildings established as street addresses: H 1334 (7)

Aerial photography: H 1210.5

Aerial views as a subdivision: H 1210.5 (2)

Affairs, Political

Formulating headings: H 1592

Airplanes, Named

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Airports

Assigning headings for names of individual airports: H 1211

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Aliens

Definition and use: H 1581 (1, 4)

Almshouses

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Amateurs' manuals as a subdivision: H 1943.5 (2)

Amendments, Constitutional: H 1465 (4-5)

America–Discovery and exploration: H 1564 (2)

[. . .] **Americans**

United States not used as geographic subdivision under: H 1919.5 (3)

Ampersands: Appendix C (4), Appendix A (2-3)

Amusement parks

SEE ALSO Parks

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Analog computer simulation: H 2040 (4)

Ancient and classical works: H 1412

Ancient cities (pre-1500)

SEE Extinct cities (pre-1500)

Ancient jurisdictions (other than cities)

As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (3, 6)

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Ancient peoples

Assigning headings: H 1225 (2)

Civilizations: H 1370 (2)

and

In music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (26-27)

[. . .] **and** [. . .] headings: H 310

Broader terms: H 370 (7)

Religion headings: H 1998 (5-6)

[. . .] **and state**

SEE **Government policy** as a subdivision

Anecdotes as a subdivision

Pets: H 1720 (2)

Animals

SEE ALSO Domestic animals

[. . .] as [. . .] headings: H 360

Assigning classification numbers: H 1332 (5)

Assigning headings for fictional works: H 1790 (3)

Headings previously unprinted in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*: H 1332 (5)

Geographic subdivision allowed at any taxonomic level: H 1332 (5)

–**Legends and stories** not used: H 1627 (4), H 1720 (1)

Pattern heading: H 1147

Subdivisions for legends and stories: H 1720

Subject heading proposals: H 1332 (1-5)

Individual animals with proper names: H 1332 (6-7)

Annotated bibliographies

Distinguished from collections of abstracts: H 1205 (2)

Antarctica

As geographic qualifier: H 810 (1)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (7)

Antiquities as a subdivision: H 1225

Not used under extinct cities: H 715 (3)

Apartment houses

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Apologetic works as a subdivision: H 1472 (1)

Appendices: H 2145

Appropriations and expenditures as a subdivision: H 1624 (1)

Aquariums, Public

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Aqueducts

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Arab as a qualifier: H 1223

Arab countries: H 1223

Arabian as a qualifier: H 1223

Arabic as a qualifier: H 1223

Arabic subject headings: H 181

Arboretums

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Archaeological collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Archaeological periods and cultures: H 1225 (2)

Archaeological sites

Assigning subject headings: H 1225 (1)

Contrasted with extinct cities: H 715 (3)

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Subject heading proposals: H 1225 (3-4)

Archaeological works

Assigning subject headings: H 1225

Specific named peoples: H 1225 (2)

Arches

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Archival resources as a subdivision: H 1230 (2-3)

Archives as a subdivision: H 1230

Manuscript catalogs: H 1361 (5)

Area studies: H 2110 (2)

Arenas

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Aristocratic families

Subject heading proposals: H 1574 (3-4)

Armed forces

Pattern heading: H 1159

Regimental histories: H 1995

Armenia (Republic): H 1023 (2-4)

Armories

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Arranged as a qualifier of music form/genre headings: H 250 (5), H 1160 (1-2), H 1917.5 (15-16)

Arsenals

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Art

Historical periods: H 1250 (4-5)

Pattern heading: H 1148

Qualifiers for art headings: H 306 (3), H 1250 (2-6)

Single works of art: H 1250 (12)

Style: H 1250 (5,10)

Art (*Continued*)

Works of art by a single artist: H 1250 (10-11)

Works of art by more than one artist: H 1250 (2-10)

Art, Chinese

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1148

Art, Italian

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1148

Art, Japanese

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1148

Art, Korean

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1148

Art collections: H 1250 (6)

Art collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Manuscript collections: H 1855 (8)

Art movements: H 1250 (5)

Art objects

Catalogs: H 1360 (1)

Art works, Individual

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Arthurian romances: H 1795 (2)

Articles in the initial position in subject headings

Geographic names: H 690 (6)

Titles of publications used as subject headings: H 290

Topical headings: H 290

Artificial languages

–**Textbooks for English, [French, etc.] speakers:** H 2187 (3)

Artificial satellites

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Artillery as a subdivision: H 1159 (2)

Artistic photography: H 1255

Artistic style qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (3)

Artists

SEE ALSO Manuscript illuminators

Qualifying art headings to show nationality, ethnic, or religious affiliation of artists:

H 1250 (2)

Artists' groups

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Arts, The

SEE ALSO Art

Literatures

Performing arts

Definition: H 1250 (1)

Usage of the heading **Arts:** H 1250 (2)

- [. . .] as [. . .] headings: H 360
 - Broader terms: H 370 (6)
- Asian conglomerate corporations
 - Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)
- Assassinations
 - Formulating headings: H 1592
 - Dates in subdivisions: H 1078
- Assignment of subject headings
 - SEE* Subject heading assignment
- Asteroids
 - Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)
- Astronomical features
 - Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)
- Asylums (Charitable institutions)
 - Established as name headings: H 405 (5)
- Athletic contests
 - SEE ALSO* Sports events
 - Established as name headings: H 405 (5)
- Atlases: H 1865
- Atlases, Scientific and technical: H 1935 (3)
- Attitudes** as a subdivision: H 1955 (2)
- Audio cassettes, Catalogs of
 - SEE* Juvenile films
 - Juvenile sound recordings
- Audio-visual aids** as a subdivision: H 1361 (2, 6)
 - Study and teaching–Audio-visual aids:** H 2110 (4)
- Audiotape catalogs** as a subdivision: H 1361 (3)
- Audiovisual materials: H 2230
 - Catalogs: H 1361 (2-4)
- Audiovisual materials, Juvenile
 - Juvenile films: H 1690 (2-3)
 - Juvenile sound recordings: H 1690 (2-3)
- Auditing** as a subdivision: H 1624 (2)
- Auditoriums
 - Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)
- Australia
 - Qualification of geographic headings: H 810 (1)
 - Abbreviations of states: H 810 (8)
- Author-title subject headings
 - SEE* Name-title subject headings
- Authority records, Descriptive
 - SEE* Name authority records

Authority records for subject headings

SEE Subject authority records

Authority research for subject heading proposals: H 202

Authorization of headings for geographic subdivision: H 364

Authors, English

 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155.2

Authors, Literary

SEE Authors, English

 Literary authors, Groups of

 Literary authors, Individual

Autobiography

SEE Biography

Automobiles

 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1195

Autonomous communities as a subdivision: H 713

Autonomous regions as a subdivision: H 713

Avalanches

 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Awards: H 1265

 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Azerbaijan: H 1023 (2-4)

- B -

Ballads

 Language qualifiers for musical works: H 1916.3 (2), H 1917 (1)

 Music genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)

Banks

 Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Bars

 Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Basins, Geological

 Formulating headings: H 800 (7)

Basins, River

SEE Watersheds

Bathhouses

 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Baths, Ancient

 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Battles

Assignment of subject headings: H 1285 (3-5)

Subject heading proposals: H 1285 (1-3)

Indian battles: H 1285 (3)

Bays

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Belarus: H 1023 (2-4)

Belles lettres

SEE Literatures

specific literatures and genres

Beowulf

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155.8

Berlin: H 945 (2-3)

Broader terms for entities in Berlin: H 375

Geographic area codes: H 945 (3)

Geographic subdivision: H 945 (3)

BGN decisions

Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (3-4)

Obtaining the approved form: H 690 (2)

Use in selecting the form of a heading: H 690 (3)

Bible

SEE ALSO Sacred works

Assignment of subject headings: H 1295

Commentaries: H 1435 (3)

Establishing [. . .] **in the Bible** headings: H 1295 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1188

Versions or translations: H 1300

Commentaries: H 1435 (3)

Biblical characters

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Biblical teaching as a subdivision: H 1295 (2)

Bibliographic file maintenance: H 165

Bibliographies, Annotated

SEE Annotated bibliographies

Bibliographies about individual persons: H 1322

Bibliographies of bibliographies: H 1325

Bibliographies of periodicals: H 1927 (2)

Bibliography–Early as a subdivision: H 1576 (3)

Bibliography–Exhibitions as a subdivision: H 1593 (2)

SEE ALSO **Bio-bibliography** as a subdivision

Bibliographies about individual persons: H 1322

Catalogs of library materials: H 1361

Government publications: H 1643 (2)

Lists of imprints on a topic: H 1660 (2)

Bilateral agreements: H 2227 (3)

Bilingual dictionaries: H 1540 (1, 2)

Bio-bibliography as a subdivision: **H 1328**

Bio-bibliography–Dictionaries as a subdivision: H 1328

Biographical fiction: H 1790 (3)

Biography: H 1330

SEE ALSO Partial biography

Biographical fiction: H 1790 (3)

Composers: H 1438 (1)

Limitation of four personal names assigned to biographical works: H 1330 (2)

Personal narratives: H 1928 (1)

Biography as a subdivision

SEE ALSO **Bio-bibliography** as a subdivision

Animals: H 1720 (1)

Correspondence: H 1480 (2)

[. . .], **House of–Biography** not used: H 1574 (2)

Literary authors: H 1330 (2)

Non-free-floating usage: H 1330 (4)

Places: H 1845 (4)

Biography of women: H 1330 (3)

SEE ALSO Wives of famous men

Biological names

Assignment of classification numbers: H 1332 (5)

Capitalization: Appendix B (8)

Headings previously unprinted in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*: H 1332 (5)

Geographic subdivision allowed at any taxonomic level: H 1332 (5)

Subject heading proposals: H 1332

Biological stations

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Blizzards

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Blockades

Formulating headings: H 1592

Board on Geographic Names' decisions

SEE BGN decisions

Boards of trade (Chambers of commerce)

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

- Bodies of water
 - Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5
 - Regions based on: H 1145.5 (2)
- Bodies of water, International
 - SEE* International bodies of water
- Body, Organs of the
 - SEE* Organs of the body
- Body, Parts of the
 - SEE* Parts of the body
- Body, Regions of the
 - SEE* Regions of the body
- Bombardments: H 1560 (2)
- Bombings
 - Formulating headings: H 1592
 - Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)
- Bonsai collections** as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)
- Book collections, Private
 - SEE* **Library** as a subdivision
- Book of Mormon:** H 1300
 - Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1188
- Book reviews** as a subdivision: H 2021 (1)
- Books and reading:** H 1333 (1)
- Books and reading** as a subdivision: H 1333 (1-2)
- Bosnia and Hercegovina: H 1055
- Botanical gardens
 - Established as name headings: H 405 (5)
- Boundaries** as a subdivision: H 1333.5
 - Treaties** not used: H 1333.5
- Boundary disputes: H 1333.5
- Bridges: H 1334 (1)
 - Broader terms: H 1334 (8)
 - Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)
- British Virgin Islands
 - Abbreviation as geographic qualifier: H 810 (11)
 - Geographic subdivision practice: H 807 (8)
- Broadcasting stations
 - Established as name headings: H 405 (5)
- Broader terms: **H 370**, H 375
 - Changing references: H 195 (1-2)
 - Contrasted with "General see also" references: H 371 (3)
 - "Gaps" in the hierarchy: H 370 (5)
 - Geographic subject headings: H 690 (8)
 - Keying in subject authority records: H 200 (5-7, 16)

Broader terms (*Continued*)

Musical compositions: H 250 (1)

Musical instruments: H 1918 (4)

Subdivisions under headings with nationality, ethnic group, or language qualifiers:

H 320 (2)

[topic]–[place] references: H 375

BTS

SEE Broader terms

Buddha

SEE Gautama Buddha

Buddhism

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1185

Building details: H 1334 (8)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Buildings and structures

SEE ALSO specific types of buildings and structures

Assignment of subject headings: H 1334 (9-10)

Established as street addresses: H 1334 (7)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Geographic qualifiers: H 1334 (3-6)

Buildings in London, England: H 1334 (4)

Buildings on islands: H 1334 (4)

Occupied by corporate bodies: H 1334 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Subject heading proposals: H 1334 (1-9)

Buildings, structures, etc. as a subdivision: H 832 (1), H 1334 (1, 9), **H 1334.5**

Airports: H 1211

Not used as broader term for structures in cities: H 375, H 1334 (1)

Bus terminals

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Business parks

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

- C -

Campaigns as a subdivision: H 1285 (3)

Camps

SEE ALSO Concentration camps

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Canadian provinces: H 713
 As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (5)
 As qualifiers in geographic headings: H 810 (1)
 Abbreviations of provinces: H 810 (8)

Canals
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11), H 690 (1)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Cancelling subject headings: H 193 (5-6)
 Adding 682 notes to explain cancellations: H 193.5
 UF references from cancelled forms: H 193 (2), H 373 (2)

Cancer
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1150

Cantons as a subdivision: H 713

Capitalization: Appendix B
 Awards, medals, prizes, etc.: H 1265 (1)
 Geographic headings: Appendix B (9), H 690 (7)

Capitols
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Capture, [date] as a subdivision: H 1560 (2)

Cardinal numerals
 SEE Numerals

Caribbean Islands
 SEE Islands of the Caribbean

Caricatures and cartoons
 SEE Comic characters
 Comic strips

Cartoon characters: H 1430
 SEE ALSO Fictitious characters

Cartoons: H 1430

Case studies as a subdivision: H 1350

Cases as a subdivision: H 1350

Cases, clinical reports, statistics as a subdivision
 Discontinued: H 1350

Cassettes, Catalogs of
 SEE **Audiotape catalogs** as a subdivision
 Film catalogs as a subdivision

Castles: H 1334 (1)
 –**Capture, [date]**: H 1560 (2)
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)
 –**Siege, [date]**: H 1560 (2)

Casualties–Statistics as a subdivision: H 2095 (2)

Catalogs, Exhibition
 Artistic photography: H 1255 (3-4)

Catalogs, Library

SEE Audiovisual materials–Catalogs

Library catalogs

Manuscript collections–Catalogs

Microform catalogs

Union catalogs

[*specific form*] as a subdivision, e.g. **Film catalogs** as a subdivision

Catalogs, Publishers'

SEE Publishers' catalogs

Catalogs, Union

SEE Union catalogs

Catalogs and collections as a subdivision

Musical instruments: H 1360 (3), H 1427 (1-2)

Natural objects: H 1360 (3), H 1427 (2-3)

Use of geographic subdivision for location of collection: H 1427 (1)

Catalogs as a subdivision: H 1360

Archives: H 1230 (2), H 1361 (5)

Collections of objects: H 1360, H 1427 (2), H 1670 (3)

Library materials: H 1361

Manuscript collections: H 1361 (4-6)

Source materials: H 2080 (5)

Catalogs of manuscript collections: H 1361 (4-6)

Categories of headings established as subject or name headings: H 405

Cathedrals

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Catholic Church

–**Foreign relations**: H 1629 (2)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1187

Cattle

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1147

Cavalry as a subdivision: H 1159 (2)

Caves

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Subject heading proposals: H 1225 (4)

Celebrations

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Celestial bodies

As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (9)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Subdivisions under places not used: H 1140 (1)

Cemeteries: H 1365

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Cemetery sites, Archaeological
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Census as a subdivision: H 1366

Central, Northern, Southern, etc., as qualifiers
 Headings for regions: H 760 (4, 5)

Centuries: H 620

Chambers of commerce
 Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Changing existing subject headings: H 193

Changing references in subject authority records: H 195

Chapels
 Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Characters, Special
 SEE Special characters

Checklist for authority research on subject heading proposals: H 202 (9)

Checklist for subject heading proposals: H 200 (11)

Chemicals
 Pattern headings: H 1149

Children's fiction
 SEE Juvenile fiction

Children's films
 SEE Juvenile films

Children's literature
 SEE **Juvenile literature** as a subdivision

Children's plays
 SEE Juvenile drama

Children's poetry
 SEE Juvenile poetry

Children's sound recordings
 SEE Juvenile sound recordings

China: H 925

Chinese subject headings (Non-Roman): H 182

Chorus music headings
 Construction: H 1917.5 (32-38)

Christian denominations
 Adjectival qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (1)
 –**Apologetic works**: H 1472 (1)
 Assigning subject headings: H 1187 (1), H 1998, H 2015
 –**Controversial literature**: H 1472
 Corporate body headings established as name headings: H 405 (6)
 –**Directories**: H 1558 (2-3)
 Establishing [*topic*]–**Baptists**, [**Catholic Church**, etc.]: H 2015 (2)
 Establishing [*topic*]–**Religious aspects**–**Baptists**, [**Catholic Church**, etc.]: H 1998 (2-3)

Christian denominations (*Continued*)

Headings naming a denomination's music not assigned: H 1917 (3)

–**Liturgy–Texts:** H 2190 (3)

Pattern heading: H 1187

Christian life: H 2015.5 (1)

Christian sects

SEE Christian denominations

Chronological headings: H 620

Chronological subdivisions: H 620, H 1075 (2)

Art: H 1148 (2-3)

–**Foreign relations:** H 870 (3)

–**History:** H 1647 (2-3)

Jazz and popular music: H 1916.5 (2-4)

Musical compositions: H 1160 (2-3)

Chronology: H 1367

Chronology as a subdivision: H 1367

Churches

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Circuses

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Cities

SEE ALSO City parks

City sections

Extinct cities (pre-1500)

Natural features in cities

names of specific cities

–**Buildings, structures, etc.:** H 832 (1), **H 1334.5**

Airports: H 1211

Not used as broader term for structures in cities: H 375, H 1334 (1)

Cities assigned directly as geographic subdivisions: H 830 (7)

"City flip" discontinued: H 832 (1)

–**Description and travel:** H 1530

Disasters, riots, demonstrations, etc.: H 832 (1), **H 1560**

Event headings as subdivisions under cities: H 1592 (9)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Geographic qualifiers for entities in cities: H 810 (5)

Buildings: H 1334 (4)

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 832

[. . .] **Metropolitan Area:** H 362 (1), **H 790** (1-3)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

[. . .] **Region:** H 362 (2), **H 790** (1, 4)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

[. . .] **Suburban Area:** H 362 (2), **H 790** (1, 3)

Cities (*Continued*)

Subdivisions formerly used under cities: H 832 (2-3)

Citing sources in subject authority records: H 200 (7-8, 17), **H 203**

Authority research guidelines: H 202 (3-8)

Citizen participation as a subdivision: H 1942 (3)

City districts

SEE City sections

"City flip"

Discontinued: **H 832**, H 1560 (1)

City halls: H 1334 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

City parks

SEE ALSO Parks

Assignment of subject headings: H 1925 (6)

Geographic qualifiers: H 810 (5)

City sections: H 720

Established as name headings: H 405 (6), H 720 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Geographic subdivision: H 720 (2), **H 830 (4)**

City streets

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13), H 690 (1)

Subject heading proposals: H 2098

Geographic qualifiers: H 2098 (1-2)

Use of vernacular: H 2098 (1)

Civic centers

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Civil trials: H 2228 (2-3)

Civil wars

Pattern heading: H 1200

Civilization: H 1370

SEE ALSO Ethnic groups

Religious sects

Ancient peoples

Influence of one civilization on another: H 1370 (4)

Special civilizations of particular places: H 1370 (3)

[topic] and civilization: H 1370 (5)

Types of civilization: H 1370 (2)

Civilization as a subdivision: H 1370 (2-3)

Period subdivisions: H 1370 (3)

CJK subject headings: H 182

Clans

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Clarinet

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1161

Classes of persons

SEE ALSO Ancient peoples

Ethnic groups

Indians

Literary authors, Groups of

Nationalities

[. . .] as [. . .] headings: H 360

Biography: H 1330 (2-4)

Immigrants: H 1581 (3)

Persons with multifaceted careers: H 1330 (3)

–**Correspondence:** H 1480 (2)

–**Diaries:** H 1538

–**Directories:** H 1558 (1)

Ethnic groups as qualifiers: H 351

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1100

[. . .] in [. . .] headings: H 360

Nationalities as qualifiers: H 350

–**Portraits:** H 1935 (2)

–**Psychological testing:** H 2186

–**Religious life:** H 2015.5 (1-2)

Classical and ancient works: H 1412

Classification as a subdivision

Folklore materials: H 1627 (2)

Classification numbers in subject authority records: **H 365**

Adding numbers to new records: H 200 (3, 15)

Biological names: H 1332 (5)

Changing numbers in existing records: H 193 (3), **H 196**

Literature headings: H 365 (2)

Musical instrument headings: H 365 (2), H 1918 (5)

Club houses

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Coding headings (*May Subd Geog*), (*Not Subd Geog*), etc.: H 364

Coin collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Coliseums

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Collected works as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 1425

Collections, Public or Private

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Collections as a subdivision: H 1425

Collections of documents: H 1643 (2)

Collections of manuscripts: H 1855 (8, 19-21)
Collections of objects
 Assignment of subject headings: H 1427 (2-5)
 Catalogs: H 1360, H 1427 (2)
 –**Indexes** not used: H 1670 (3)
 Partial title added entries for names of collections: H 1427 (3)
 Subdivisions for types of collections: H 1427 (1)
Collections of treaties: H 2227 (1-2)
Collective farms
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)
Collective settlements
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)
Colleges
 SEE ALSO Universities and colleges
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)
Colonies of individual countries
 SEE ALSO Territories and possessions as a subdivision
 Pattern heading: H 1149.5
Comarcas: H 760 (3)
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)
Comets
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)
Comfort stations, Public
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)
Comic characters: H 1430
 SEE ALSO Fictitious characters
Comic strips: H 1430
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)
Commas
 SEE Punctuation
Commentaries on commentaries: H 1435 (4)
Commentaries on individual works
 Assignment of subject headings: H 1435 (2-6)
 Anonymous classics: H 1435 (3)
 Converting form headings to topical equivalents: H 1435 (5)
 Sacred works: H 1435 (3)
 Treatment of a work as an edition or as a commentary: H 1435 (1)
 Treatment of works consisting of both original text and commentary: H 1435 (6)
Commercial treaties as a subdivision: H 2227 (2)
Commonwealth of Independent States: H 1023 (4)
Communes
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Communities, Planned
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Community centers
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Competitions
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Composers: H 1438
 Biography: H 1438 (1)
 –**Criticism and interpretation**: H 1438 (1)
 Facsimiles of manuscripts: H 1595 (2)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110, H 1438 (1)
 Works about specific compositions: H 1438 (2)
 Works about their music with a specific focus or on a specific form: H 1438 (1, 3)

Compositions, Musical
 SEE Musical compositions

Compound family names: H 1631 (4)

Compound subject headings: H 310

Computer languages
 SEE ALSO **Machine translating** as a subdivision
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Computer networks
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Computer programs, Individual: H 2070 (2-3)
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Computer programs as a subdivision: H 2070 (1)

Computer simulation: H 2040 (2)

Computer software: H 2070
 Individual programs established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Computer systems
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Concentration camps
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Concert halls
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Concordances as a subdivision: H 1670 (3)

Concordats: H 2227 (1)

Concrete
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1158

Conferences
 Established as name headings: H 1592 (2)

Conglomerate corporations, Asian
 SEE Asian conglomerate corporations

Congo: H 928

Congolese as an adjectival qualifier: H 928 (3)
 Congresses: H 1460
Congresses as a subdivision: H 1205 (1), **H 1460**
Congresses–Attendance as a subdivision: H 1460 (2)
 Conservation districts
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)
 Constitutional amendments: H 1465 (4-5)
 Constitutional history: H 1465 (5)
 Constitutional law: H 1465 (2-3)
 Constitutions: H 1465
 Corporate bodies: H 1465 (6)
 Constructing subject headings: H 180 (7-8)
 Music: H 250, H 1438 (2), H 1916.3 (1), H 1917.5
 Musical instruments: H 1918
Construction industry
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1153
 Content designation
 SEE Tagging subject headings
 Subfield coding
 Contests
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6), H 1592 (2)
 Continents
 As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (6)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140
 Contracts: H 1468
Contracts and specifications as a subdivision
 Discontinued: H 1468 (1), H 2083 (1)
Controversial literature as a subdivision: H 1472
 Convention centers
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)
 Convents
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)
Conversion tables as a subdivision: H 2160
 Cooking: H 1475
 Cooking ingredients: H 1475 (2)
 Establishing headings: H 1475 (4)
 Cooking styles: H 1475 (1)
Copper
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1149
 Core level records: H 170
Corn
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1180

Corporate bodies

SEE ALSO specific types of corporate bodies

Biography: H 1330 (4)

Buildings occupied by corporate bodies: H 1334 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)

Constitutions: H 1465 (6)

–**Directories:** H 1558 (2)

Dividing by place: H 364 (5), **H 475**

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1105

–**History–Chronology:** H 1367 (2)

Name changes: H 460

Named events focused on a corporate body: H 1592 (7)

[. . .] **Region** headings based on corporate bodies: H 760 (4)

Tagging in subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Corporate bodies, Jurisdictional

SEE Geographic name headings

Corporate bodies, Non-jurisdictional

SEE Corporate bodies

Correcting subject headings in bibliographic records: H 165

Correctional institutions

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Correspondence as a subdivision: H 1480

Classes of persons: H 1480 (2)

Ethnic groups: H 1480 (2)

Correspondence of individual persons: H 1480

–**History–Sources** not used under headings assigned to correspondence: H 2080 (2)

–**Sources** not used under headings assigned to correspondence: H 2080 (2)

Countries, cities, etc. as name headings

SEE Geographic name headings

Country clubs

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Counts: H 1574 (3-4)

Coups d'etat

Pattern heading: H 1200

Courthouses

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Crematories

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Criminal trials: H 2228 (2)

Criticism and interpretation as a subdivision

Composers: H 1438 (1)

Croatia: H 1055

Crops

Pattern heading: H 1180

Cross-cultural studies as a subdivision: H 1510

Cross references

SEE Broader terms

Narrower terms

Related terms

"Used for" references

Cruises

Dates in headings for specific cruises: H 1078

Formulating headings: H 1592

Cuisines, National: H 1475 (1)

Cultural revolutions

Formulating headings: H 1592

Culture

Definition and comparison with **Civilization**: H 1370 (1)

Cultures

SEE Archaeological periods and culture

Civilization

Customhouses

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Cyclones

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

- D -

Dams

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Dance halls

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Databases: H 1520

Serially issued databases: H 1580.5 (1)

Databases as a subdivision: H 1520, H 1580.5

Dates

Abbreviations: Appendix A (3-4)

Punctuation of open dates: Appendix D (3)

Dates in subdivisions

SEE ALSO **Early works to 1800** as a subdivision

"Period subdivisions" as a subtopic under specific topics

Abbreviations: Appendix A (3-4)

Headings for specific events: H 1078

Days, Special: H 1592

Decades, Special: H 1592

Decorations: H 1265

Deities

SEE ALSO Greek and Roman gods

Assignment of subject headings: H 1795 (2)

Tagging in subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Deleting subject authority records: H 193 (5-6)

Adding 682 notes to explain deletions: H 193.5

UF references from deleted forms: H 193 (2), H 373 (2)

Deltas

Formulating headings: H 800 (6)

Demonstrations

Formulating headings: H 1592

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Denominations, Christian

SEE Christian denominations

Denominations, Religious: H 1998 (2-3), H 2015 (2)

SEE ALSO Christian denominations

Religious sects

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Departments as a subdivision: H 713

Description and travel as a subdivision: H 1530

Descriptive authority records

SEE Name authority records

Descriptive name headings

SEE Name authority records

Name headings

Deserts

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Design and construction as a subdivision: H 1532

Design as a subdivision: H 1532

Designs and plans as a subdivision: H 1532

Destruction, [date] as a subdivision: H 1560 (2)

Details, Building: H 1334 (8)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Diacritics: Appendix C

Diaries: H 1538

As a literary genre: H 1538 (2)

–**History–Sources** not used under headings assigned to diaries: H 2080 (2)

–**Sources** not used under headings assigned to diaries: H 2080 (2)

Diaries as a subdivision: **H 1538**

Dictionaries: H 1540

Dictionaries as a subdivision: **H 1540**, H 2184 (1)
 Acronyms–Dictionaries not used: H 1206.5
 –**Terminology–Dictionaries** not used: H 2184 (1)
 –**Terms and phrases–Dictionaries** not used: H 2184 (1)
Dictionaries, Juvenile as a subdivision: H 1540 (4)
 Dictionaries, Language
 SEE Language dictionaries
 Dictionaries, Picture
 SEE Picture dictionaries
 Dictionaries, Subject
 SEE Subject dictionaries
Diet therapy–Recipes as a subdivision: H 1475 (2)
Digests as a subdivision: H 1550
 Digital computer simulation: H 2040 (2)
 Diplomatic relations
 SEE **Foreign relations** as a subdivision
 Direct subdivision: H 830 (1-2, 5-7)
 Direct word order
 Topical subject headings: H 306
 Directional qualifiers (**Northern, Southern, Central**, etc.)
 Headings for regions: H 760 (4, 5)
 Directories: H 1558
Directories–Bibliography: H 1558 (1)
 Directories, Telephone
 SEE **Telephone directories** as a subdivision
Directories as a subdivision: H 1558
 Archival resources: H 1230 (3)
 –**Periodicals** not used as further subdivision: H 1558 (4), H 1927 (2)
 Disasters
 SEE ALSO specific types of disasters
 Formulating headings: H 1592
 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560
Discography as a subdivision: H 1361 (3)
 Discontinued subdivisions
 –**Addresses, essays, lectures:** H 1210
 –**Cases, clinical reports, statistics:** H 1350
 –**Collected works:** H 1425
 –**Contracts and specifications:** H 2083
 –**Emigration and immigration–Biography:** H 1581 (1)
 –**Exploring expeditions:** H 1564 (1)
 –**Foreign population:** H 1581 (1)
 –**Government publications:** H 1643 (1)
 –**Influence of [. . .]:** H 1675 (1)

Discontinued subdivisions (*Continued*)

- Influence on [. . .]:** H 1675 (1)
- Legends and stories:** H 1720 (1)
- Socioeconomic status:** H 1578 (1), H 2055 (1)
- Stories:** **H 1790 (2)**
- Suburbs and environs:** H 790 (3)
- Theater disaster, [date]:** H 1560 (2)
- Yearbooks:** H 2400

Discoveries in geography: H 1564 (1)

Discovery and exploration as a subdivision: H 1564

- History** not used: H 1564 (1)

Diseases

Pattern heading: H 1150

Dispensaries

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Dissertations: H 1570

Dividing corporate name headings geographically: H 364 (5), **H 475**

Division of the world of named entities: H 405

Docks

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Documents, Collections of: H 1643 (2)

Domes as building details: H 1334 (1, 8)

Domestic animals

SEE ALSO Animals

Biological names: H 1332 (6)

Pattern heading: H 1147

Domestic plants

SEE ALSO Plants

Biological names: H 1332 (6)

Dividing by place: H 1332 (6)

Doors as building details: H 1334 (1, 8)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Doubling on two or more musical instruments: H 1917.5 (8)

Drama: H 1780

Period subdivisions: H 1156 (2)

Drama, English

SEE **English drama**

Drama, Folk

SEE **Folk drama**

Drama, Juvenile

SEE Juvenile drama

Drama as a subdivision: H 1780

Fiction films: H 2230 (2)

Fictitious characters: H 1610 (2)

Musical works: H 1916.3 (4), H 2075 (3)

Place names: H 910 (2)

Dramatists

SEE Literary authors, Groups of
Literary authors, Individual

Drugs

Pattern heading: H 1149

–**Testing**: H 2186 (2)

Duets

Music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (10-11, 14-15, 30)

Subject heading proposals: H 250 (3), H 1917.5 (10-11)

Dukes: H 1574 (3-4)

Dwellings

SEE ALSO Buildings and structures

Broader terms: H 1334 (8)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Dynasties: H 1574

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1120

Subject heading proposals: H 1574 (1-2)

- E -

Earls: H 1574 (3-4)

Early cities

SEE Extinct cities (pre-1500)

Early printed books: H 1576 (4)

Early works: H 1576

Early works to 1800 as a subdivision: H 1576

Commentaries: H 1435 (4)

Earthquakes

Establishing individual earthquakes: H 1560 (5)

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

East Germany

SEE Germany

Ecclesiastical entities that are also names of places

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Not treated as geographic headings: H 830 (9)

Not used as geographic subdivisions: H 830 (9)

Ecological stations

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Economic conditions as a subdivision: H 1578

Period subdivisions: H 1578 (2)

Editions: H 175

Deleting –**Addresses, essays, lectures** from earlier editions of a work: H 1210

Deleting –**Collected works** from earlier editions of a work: H 1425

Treatment of a work containing commentary as an edition or commentary:

H 1435 (1)

Editions of visual materials: H 2230 (3)

Education as a subdivision: H 1579

Contrasted with –**Training of**: H 2217 (2)

Educational evaluation: H 1591 (2)

Educational institutions, Individual

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Pattern heading: H 1151

Yearbooks: H 2400

Educational institutions, Types of

Pattern heading: H 1151.5

[. . .], **Effect of [. . .] on**

Discontinued: H 1580 (2)

Effect of [. . .] on as a subdivision

Free-floating when established under pattern headings: H 1580 (2)

Subject heading proposals: H 1580 (2)

Effect on [. . .] as a subdivision

Not used: H 1580 (1)

Electronic serials: H 1580.5

Embassies

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Emigrants

SEE Immigrants

Emigration and immigration: H 1581

Emigration and immigration as a subdivision: H 1581

Emigration and immigration–Biography as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 1581 (1)

Emigration and immigration–Government policy as a subdivision: H 1581 (2)

Emigration policy

SEE **Emigration and immigration–Government policy** as a subdivision

Empires

Assigned directly as geographic subdivisions: H 830 (6)

Enactments, Legislative: H 1715

England

Contrasted with **Great Britain**: H 955 (1)

Geographic subdivision: H 955

Law cataloging: H 955

Qualification of geographic headings

Use of counties to resolve conflicts: H 810 (4)

English drama

Period subdivisions: H 1156 (2)

English language

SEE ALSO **Translating** as a subdivision

–**Dictionaries**: H 1540 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1154

–**Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.**: H 1540 (1)

Period subdivisions: H 1154 (1)

–**Terms and phrases**: H 1540 (1), H 2184 (1)

–**Textbooks for foreign speakers**: H 2187 (2)

–**Texts**: H 2190 (1)

English literature

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1156

Period subdivisions: H 1156 (2)

Epidemics

Formulating headings: H 1592

Eruptions of volcanoes

Formulating headings: H 1592 (5)

Establishing subject headings

SEE Subject heading proposals

"Subject heading proposals" as a subtopic under specific topics

Estates

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Estonia: H 1023 (2-4)

Estuaries

Formulating headings: H 800 (6), H 1145.5 (2)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Ethics, Professional

SEE **Professional ethics**

Ethnic groups

SEE ALSO Ancient peoples

Clans

Ethnic groups in the United States

Indians

Tribes (Ethnic groups)

Biography: H 1330 (3)

–**Civilization** not used: H 1370 (2)

Ethnic groups (*Continued*)

–**Correspondence:** H 1480 (2)

–**Diaries:** H 1538 (1)

–**Directories:** H 1558 (1)

Folklore: H 1627 (2-3)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1103

Free-floating subdivisions under headings for classes of persons with ethnic qualifiers:
H 1100

–**Government relations:** H 1942 (2)

–**History–Chronology:** H 1367

Immigrants: H 1581 (3, 5)

–**Languages–Texts:** H 2190 (2)

Music: H 1916.3 (2, 6), **H 1917**

Philosophy: H 1929

–**Politics and government:** H 1942 (2)

–**Psychological testing:** H 2186

Qualifiers for subject headings: H 320, H 351

System of law: H 1718

–**Treaties:** H 2227 (1)

Ethnic groups in the United States: H 1919.5 (3-4)

SEE ALSO Ethnic groups

Newspapers: H 1920

Systems of law: H 1718 (1)

Ethnic qualifiers for subject headings

SEE Subject heading qualifiers–Ethnic qualifiers

Ethnic studies: H 2110 (1)

Ethnological collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Ethnomusicological collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Evaluation: H 1591

Evaluation as a subdivision: H 1591

Events

SEE ALSO specific types of events

Capitalization: Appendix B (6-7)

Biography: H 1330 (4)

Dates in subdivisions for specific events: H 1078

Drama: H 1780 (4)

Established as name or subject headings: H 405 (7, 12), H 1592

Established as subdivisions

Subfield coding: H 1592 (6)

Fiction: H 1790 (5)

Formulating subject headings as subdivisions: H 1592 (6-10)

Formulating subject headings in phrase form: H 1592 (3-5)

–**Personal narratives:** H 1928 (1)

Events (*Continued*)

Poetry: H 1800 (4)

–**Songs and music**: H 2075

Subject headings to bring out subordinate jurisdictions when event headings are formulated as subdivisions under larger jurisdictions: H 1592 (9-10)

Tagging headings in subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Examinations as a subdivision: H 2186 (2)

Excavations (Archaeology): H 1225 (3)

Excerpts, Arranged as a subdivision: H 1160 (2), H 1917.5 (28)

Exhibition buildings

Broader terms: H 1334 (8)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Geographic qualifier: H 1334 (5)

Exhibition catalogs

Artistic photography: H 1255 (3-4)

Exhibitions: H 1593

Established as name headings: H 405 (7), H 1592 (2)

Individual named exhibitions: H 1593 (2-3)

Exhibitions as a subdivision: H 1593

–**Catalogs** not used: H 1593 (1)

Expeditions, Military

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Expeditions, Scientific

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Experiment stations

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Exploration, History of

SEE **Discoveries (in geography)**

Discovery and exploration

Exploration, Space: H 1564 (2)

Exploring expeditions as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 1564 (1)

Explosions

Formulating headings: H 1592

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Expositions

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Express highway interchanges: H 2098 (3)

Extinct cities (pre-1500)

SEE ALSO Cities

Contrasted with archaeological sites: H 715 (3)

–**Description and travel** not used: H 1530 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12), H 690 (1), H 715 (1)

Extinct cities (pre-1500) (*Continued*)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (3)

Regions surrounding: H 715 (3); H 760 (1)

Subject heading proposals: H 715

(Extinct city) as a qualifier: H 715 (2, 4)

- F -

Fables: H 1627 (4)

Facsimiles as a subdivision: H 1595, H 1855 (5, 9, 11, 13, 15, 16)

Facsimiles of manuscripts: H 1595 (1-2); H 1855

Facsimiles of maps: H 1595 (2)

Factories

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Fairgrounds

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Fairs

Established as name headings: H 405 (7), H 1592 (2)

Fairy tales: H 1627 (4)

Families

SEE Family names

Families, Royal

SEE Royal houses

Family as a subdivision: H 1631 (6)

Family history

SEE Genealogy

Family names: H 1631

Capitalization: Appendix B (5-6)

–**Directories**: H 1558 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1120

–**Museums, relics, etc.**: H 1916 (2)

Subject heading proposals: H 1631 (3-4)

Aristocratic or noble families: H 1574 (3-4)

Tagging headings in subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Famines

Formulating headings: H 1592

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Farms

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12), H 690 (1)

Feasts

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Feature films: H 1913 (2)

Federal Republic of Germany

SEE Germany

Ferry buildings

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Festivals

Established as name headings: H 405 (7), H 1592 (2)

Festivals, Folk

Established as name headings: H 405 (7), H 1592 (2)

Festschriften: H 1600

Fiction: H 1790

SEE ALSO Biographical fiction

Historical fiction

Juvenile fiction

Fiction as a subdivision: H 1790

Animals: H 1720 (1)

Place names: H 910 (2)

Fictitious characters: H 1610 (2)

Fiction films: H 1913 (1)

Fiction radio programs: H 1969.5 (1)

Fiction television programs: H 1913 (1)

Fictitious characters: H 1610

SEE ALSO Comic characters

Legendary characters

Collections of fiction featuring a character: H 1790 (2)

Criticism of fiction about a character: H 1790 (4)

Establishing individual characters: H 1610 (1-2)

Individual works of fiction: H 1610 (2-3)

File maintenance, Bibliographic: H 165

Film catalogs as a subdivision: H 1361 (3)

Contrasted with –**Indexes:** H 1670 (1)

Films: H 1913; H 2230

SEE ALSO Juvenile films

Finance as a subdivision: H 1624 (1)

Finance, Personal as a subdivision: H 1624 (2)

Fine art

SEE Art

Fire stations

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Fires

Formulating headings: H 1592

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

First order political divisions of countries

SEE Geographic name headings—First order political divisions of countries

Fish hatcheries

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Fishes

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1147

Fleets

Use of —**Regimental histories**: H 1995

Floods

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Folk drama: H 1627 (4)

Folk festivals and celebrations

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Folk literature: H 1627 (1, 4, 5)

Translations: H 1627 (5)

Folk music: H 1917

Music genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)

Folk poetry

Ethnic qualifiers not used: H 1627 (1)

Literary genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (1)

Folk songs

Language of text: H 1916.3 (2,5), H 1917 (1)

Music genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)

Folklore: H 1627

Collections of folklore texts: H 1627 (2)

—**History and criticism** not used: H 1627 (7)

Works about folklore: H 1627 (2)

Folklore as a subdivision: **H 1627**, H 1720 (1)

Not used under inherently folkloric topics: H 1627 (4)

Foot

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1164

Forecasting: H 1628

Subdivision preferred over phrase headings: H 1628 (1)

Forecasting as a subdivision: H 1628

Forecasts as a subdivision

Usage under centuries: H 1628 (2)

Foreign countries as a subdivision

Nationalities: H 1919.5 (2, 4)

[. . .] **in foreign countries** discontinued: H 1919.5 (1)

Foreign influences as a subdivision: H 1675 (3-4)

Foreign language teaching films: H 2230 (2)

Foreign languages, Subject headings for

SEE ALSO Artificial languages

French language

Romance languages

Translating as a subdivision

–**Acronyms:** H 1206.5

–**Dictionaries:** H 1540 (1)

–**Glossaries, vocabularies, etc.:** H 1540 (1)

Pattern headings: H 1154

Qualifying subject headings by languages: H 320

UF references: H 373 (4)

–**Readers:** H 1975 (1)

–**Study and teaching:** H 2110 (3)

–**Terms and phrases:** H 1540 (1)

–**Textbooks for foreign speakers:** H 2187 (2)

–**Texts:** H 2190 (1)

Foreign languages, Subject headings in

Articles in the initial position in subject headings: H 290

Capitalization: Appendix B (10), H 690 (7)

Diacritics and special characters: Appendix C

Establishing subject headings in foreign languages

SEE ALSO "Subject heading proposals–Use of vernacular" as a subtopic under specific topics

Buildings and structures: H 1334 (2)

Geographic headings: H 690 (4-7)

Transliteration: H 690 (6)

Musical instruments: H 1918 (1-2, 7)

Topical headings: H 315

Parallel Arabic/Persian non-Roman subject headings: H 181

Parallel CJK non-Roman subject headings: H 182

UF references in foreign languages: H 373 (3)

Foreign population as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 1581 (1)

Foreign public opinion as a subdivision: H 1955 (4)

Foreign relations as a subdivision: H 1629

–**History**–[*period subdivision*] not used: H 1629 (1)

Use of chronological subdivisions: H 870 (3)

Foreign relations–[*dates*]: H 870 (3)

Foreign relations–**Treaties** as a subdivision: H 2227 (1)

Foreign terms

SEE Foreign languages, Subject headings in

Forest districts
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Forest reserves
 SEE Reserves

Forests
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13), H 690 (1)

Forests (Administrative agencies)
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Forks of rivers: H 800 (5-6)

Form/genre headings
 Moving image works: H 1913
 Subject heading proposals: H 1913 (3-4)
 Music: **H 250**, H 1916.3 (2-3), H 1916.5 (1), H 1917 (1,3), **H 1917.5**
 Radio programs: H 1969.5
 Subject heading proposals: H 1969.5 (2-3)

Form subdivisions: H 180 (6), H 1075 (2-3)
 Commentaries: H 1435 (4)
 Literature about music: H 1160 (3-4), H 1916.3 (6, 8)
 Music of ethnic, national, and religious groups: H 1916.3 (2-3), H 1917 (1-2, 6)
 Musical compositions: H 1160 (1, 3, 6), H 2075
 Musical presentation or format: H 250 (9-10), H 1160 (6-8)
 Use of subfield code "v": H 1075 (3)

Former Soviet republics: H 1023 (2-4)

Fortresses (Structures): H 1334 (1)
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Forts
 SEE ALSO Buildings and structures
 Military installations, Active
 Military installations, Inactive
 –**Capture, [date]:** H 1560 (2)
 –**Siege, [date]:** H 1560 (2)

Fossils: H 1332 (7)
 Inverted headings: H 306 (4)

Founders of religions
 Biography: H 1330 (4)
 Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110
 Subdivisions for events focused on: H 1592 (6)

Fountains
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Free-floating subdivisions: H 1095

SEE ALSO Free-floating terms phrases

Subdivisions

Broader terms: H 370 (7)

"General see also" references: **H 371** (2, 3) H 1146 (1)

"General see" references: H 374 (2)

Subdividing by place: H 860

Used under:

Bodies of water, etc.: H 1145.5

Classes of persons: H 1100

Corporate bodies: H 1105

Ethnic groups: H 1103

Family names: H 1120

Musical compositions: H 1160

Musical instruments: H 1161

Names of literary authors: H 1110

Names of persons: H 1110

Names of places: H 1140

Nationalities: H 1103

Pattern headings: H 1146-H 1200

Rivers: H 1145.5

Free-floating terms and phrases: **H 362**, H 1140 (12)

[...] **Metropolitan Area**: H 362 (1), **H 790 (1-3)**, H 1140 (6)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

[...] **Region**

City regions: H 362 (2), **H 790 (1, 4)**, H 1140 (6)

Extinct cities: H 715 (3); H 760 (1)

Geographic regions: H 362 (2), **H 760**

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Regions based on rivers: H 362 (2), **H 800** (8), H 1145.5 (2)

[...] **Suburban Area**: H 362 (2), **H 790** (1, 3), H 1140 (6)

French language

SEE ALSO Foreign languages, Subject headings for

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1154

Funds

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Funeral homes

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

- G -

GACs

SEE Geographic area codes

Galaxies

 Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)

Galleries

 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Game preserves

SEE Reserves

Games (Events)

 Established as name headings: H 405 (7), H 1592 (2)

Gangs

 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

"Gaps" in hierarchical reference structure: H 370 (5)

Gardens

SEE ALSO Botanical gardens

 Zoological gardens

 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13), H 690 (1)

 Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Gates: H 1334 (1)

 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Gautama Buddha

 Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)

Gaza Strip: H 980

Gazetteers: H 1630

Genealogy: H 1631

 Census publications: H 1366 (3)

 Source materials: H 1845

 Headings requiring [*place*]-**Genealogy** as an additional heading: H 1845 (2)

 Subdivisions under place names used for genealogical source materials:

 H 1845 (1)

Genealogy as a subdivision: H 1631 (1-2), H 1845 (1-2)

 Census publications: H 1366 (3)

Genealogy-Handbooks, manuals, etc. as a subdivision: H 1631 (2)

Genealogy-Methodology as a subdivision: H 1631 (2)

General see also references: H 371

 Changing an existing subject authority record: H 195 (2)

 Contrasted with broader terms: H 371 (3)

 Keying in subject authority records: H 200 (5, 15)

 Music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (5, 22-24)

 Musical instruments: H 1918 (1-2)

General see also references (*Continued*)

Pattern headings as examples in general see also references: H 371 (9),
H 1146 (1, 2)

When to establish: H 370 (4), **H 371** (3)

General see references: H 200 (5, 15), **H 374**

Genre/form headings

Moving image works: H 1913

Subject heading proposals: H 1913 (3-4)

Radio programs: H 1969.5

Subject heading proposals: H 1969.5 (2-3)

Music: **H 250**, H 1916.3 (2-3), H 1916.5 (1), H 1917 (1,3), **H 1917.5**

Genres, Literary

SEE ALSO specific literary genres

Period subdivisions used under: H 1156 (1-2)

Geographic area codes: Appendix E

Bosnia and Hercegovina: H 1055 (2)

Congo: H 928 (3)

Core level records: H 170 (2)

Croatia: H 1055 (2)

Families: H 1631 (6)

Former Soviet republics: H 1023 (5)

Former Yugoslav republics: H 1055 (2)

Gaza Strip: H 980 (5)

Genealogical works: H 1631 (6)

Golan Heights: H 980 (5)

Hong Kong: H 978 (2)

Jazz: H 1916.5 (4)

Jerusalem: H 980 (5)

Kosovo (Republic): H 1055 (2)

Macedonia (Republic): H 1055 (2)

Microforms: H 1893

Montenegro: H 1055 (2)

Non-music sound recordings: H 2230 (3)

Palestine: H 980 (5)

Popular music: H 1916.5 (4)

Serbia: H 1055 (2)

Serbia and Montenegro: H 1055 (2)

Slovenia: H 1055 (2)

Soviet Union: H 1023 (5)

Vatican City: H 1045 (1)

Visual materials: H 2230 (3)

West Bank: H 980 (5)

Yugoslavia: H 1055 (2)

- Geographic headings, Jurisdictional
 - SEE Geographic name headings
- Geographic headings, Non-jurisdictional
 - SEE Geographic subject headings
- Geographic name headings
 - SEE ALSO Geographic subject headings
 - Place names
 - First order political divisions of countries: H 713
 - Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140
 - Geographic subdivision information in name authority records: H 835
 - Linear name changes in political jurisdictions
 - Recording subject usage information in name authority records: H 708
 - Use of latest name: H 708 (1), H 830 (4)
 - Mergers of two or more jurisdictions into one: H 710
 - Proposing 781 fields for name authority records: H 835 (2-3)
 - Splits of jurisdictions into multiple entities: H 710
 - Used as topical subdivisions
 - Subfield coding: H 830 (10)
- Geographic qualifiers: H 810
 - Abbreviations: H 810 (3, 8-11)
 - Buildings and structures: H 1334 (2-6)
 - CJK records: H 182 (4)
 - Deletion of generic terms in headings for regions: H 760 (2)
 - Deletion of qualifiers in geographic subdivision: H 830 (7-8)
 - Entities in cities: H 810 (5)
 - Extinct cities: H 715 (2)
 - Islands: H 807 (1-3)
 - Region headings: H 760 (2)
 - Deleting generic terms from qualifiers: H 760 (2)
 - Rivers: H 800 (1-3)
- Geographic regions
 - SEE Regions, Geographic
- Geographic subdivision information
 - In name authority records: H 835
 - In subject authority records: H 364, H 836
- Geographic subdivisions: H 830, H 1075 (1)
 - Arabic/Persian records: H 181 (3)
 - Authorizing headings to be divided geographically: H 364
 - CJK records: H 182 (3)
 - Corporate bodies: H 364 (5), **H 475**
 - Proposals to subdivide by place: H 475
 - Dividing topical subdivisions by place: H 860
 - Exceptions: H 830 (5-7)

Geographic subdivisions (*Continued*)

- History of geographic subdivision practice: H 830 (1-2)
- Interposing place between subject headings and topical subdivisions: H 870
- Jazz and popular music headings: H 1916.5 (2-3)
- Limit of two levels of geographic subdivision: H 830 (3)
- Music, General: H 1916.3 (3, 6)
- Music of ethnic, national, and religious groups: H 1917 (1, 4-7)
- Musical compositions: H 250 (11), H 1160 (2), H 1916.5 (2-3), H 1917 (1-2, 4)
- Musical instruments: H 1917 (1), H 1918 (3-4)
 - Brands and models: H 1918 (5)
- Parks as geographic subdivisions: H 1925 (6)
- Subdivisions
 - Further dividing by place: H 860
- Subfield coding: H 830 (10)
- Subject headings
 - Authorizing headings to be divided geographically: H 364
 - Dividing to the city level: **H 832**, H 1560
 - Proposals to divide existing headings: H 193 (1), **H 194**
 - Subfield coding: H 830 (10)
- Subject usage information
 - Name authority records: H 835
 - Subject authority records: H 836

Geographic subject headings

- SEE ALSO* Geographic name headings
 - Geographic qualifiers
 - Place names
 - types of geographic features
- Abbreviations: H 690 (6)
- Articles in the initial position in subject headings: H 690 (6)
- Capitalization: Appendix B (9), H 690 (7)
- Free-floating subdivisions
 - Used under
 - Bodies of water, streams, etc: H 1145.5
 - Names of places: H 1140
- Free-floating terms and phrases: H 362, H 1140 (6)
 - [. . .] **Metropolitan Area**: H 362 (1), H 790 (1-3), H 1140 (6)
 - Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)
 - [. . .] **Region**
 - City regions: H 362 (2), **H 790 (1, 4)** H 1140 (6)
 - Extinct cities: H 715 (3), H 760 (1)
 - Geographic regions: H 362 (2), **H 760**
 - Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Geographic subject headings

Free-floating terms and phrases (*Continued*)

Regions based on rivers: H 362 (2), **H 800** (8), H 1145.5 (2)

[. . .] **Suburban Area**: H 362 (2), **H 790 (1, 3)**, H 1140 (6)

Subject heading proposals: H 690

Authority research: H 690 (2-3)

BGN decisions: H 690 (2)

Broader terms: H 690 (8)

English vs. vernacular forms: H 690 (4-5)

UF references: H 690 (8)

Tagging in subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Transliteration: H 690 (6)

Used as topical subdivisions

Subfield coding: H 830 (10)

Geographical names [i.e. **Names, Geographical** as a subject heading]

SEE **Names, Geographical**

Geography as a subdivision: H 1530 (1)

Geologic basins

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Georgia (Republic): H 1023 (2-4)

German Democratic Republic

SEE Germany

German Federal Republic

SEE Germany

Germany: H 945

Glossaries, vocabularies, etc. as a subdivision: H 1540 (1), H 2184 (1)

Gods

SEE Deities

Greek and Roman gods

Golan Heights: H 980

Golf courses

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Government agencies

Catalogs of publications: H 1965

Government policy as a subdivision: H 1642

Government publications: H 1643

Publishers' catalogs: H 1965

Grain elevators

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Grasslands

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Graveyards

SEE Cemeteries

Great Britain: H 955

Assignment of constituent countries directly as geographic subdivisions: H 830 (5)

Geographic subdivision through names of constituent countries: H 955

Geographic subdivision in law cataloging: H 955 (2-3)

Qualification of geographic headings: H 810 (1, 8)

Use of county or region names to resolve conflicts: H 810 (4)

Great Britain–Colonies

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1149.5

Greek and Roman gods: H 1636

Groups of islands

SEE Islands

Groups of languages, Subject headings for

SEE Foreign languages, Subject headings for

Groups of persons

SEE Classes of persons

Guidebooks as a subdivision: H 1645

Gymnasiums

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

- H -

Haiti

As a geographic qualifier: H 810 (6)

Halfway houses

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Hamlet

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155.6

Handbooks, manuals, etc. as a subdivision: H 1646

SEE ALSO **Guidebooks** as a subdivision

Tables as a subdivision

Genealogical works: H 1631 (2)

Harvard University

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1151

Hawaii: H 975

Use as a geographic qualifier: H 810 (6), H 975

Hazardous waste sites

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Headings established as name or subject headings: H 405

Heads of state

SEE Rulers and statesmen

Hearing impaired, Visual materials for: H 1913 (2)

Heart

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1164

Helplines

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Herbarium as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Herbariums

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Hierarchical references

Broader terms: **H 370**, H 375

Changing references: H 195 (1-2)

Contrasted with "General see also" references: H 371 (3)

"Gaps" in the hierarchy: H 370 (5)

Geographic names: H 690 (8)

Keying in subject authority records: H 200 (6-7, 16)

Moving image genre/form headings: H 1913 (4)

Radio genre/form headings: H 1969.5 (2)

Subdivisions under headings with nationality, ethnic group, or language
qualifiers: H 320 (2)

[topic]–**[place]** references: H 375

Narrower terms

Changing references: H 195 (1-2)

Procedure for making: H 200 (7)

Highway interchanges: H 2098 (3)

Highways

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Subject heading proposals: H 2098

Geographic qualifiers: H 2098 (1-2)

Use of vernacular: H 2098 (1)

Hijackings

Formulating headings: H 1592

Hispaniola

Not used as a geographic qualifier: H 810 (6)

Historic districts

In cities

Established as name headings: H 405 (5)

Not in cities

Established as subject headings: H 405 (11)

Historic kingdoms

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (3, 6)

Historic sites

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Subject heading proposals: H 1925

Historical events

SEE Events

Historical fiction: H 1790 (3)

History

Definition and comparison with **Civilization**: H 1370 (1)

History and criticism as a subdivision

Comic strips and single panel cartoons

Not used: H 1430 (2)

Drama: H 1780 (3)

Fiction: H 1790 (4)

Folklore materials: H 1627 (2, 5-7)

Not used under **Folklore**: H 1627 (7)

Legends and romances: H 1795 (3)

Liturgical texts: H 2190 (3)

Music headings

Ethnic, national, and religious groups: H 1917 (2)

Literature and other materials about music: H 1160 (8), H 1916.3 (6)

Musical compositions: H 1160 (4)

Not used under the heading **Musical instruments** or under headings for specific instruments: H 1917 (5)

Vocal music texts: H 2190 (2)

Poetry: H 1800 (3)

Sermons: H 2032 (4)

–**Songs and music**: H 2075 (3)

History as a subdivision: H 1647

–**Bombardment, [date]**: H 1560 (2)

–**Capture, [date]**: H 1560 (2)

Chronological subdivisions: H 1647 (2-3)

–**Destruction, [date]**: H 1560 (2)

Musical instruments: H 1917 (5)

Philosophy headings: H 1647 (5)

–**Siege, [date]**: H 1560 (2)

Subdivisions not further subdivided by –**History**: H 1647 (6)

History–Chronology as a subdivision: H 1367

History, Constitutional: H 1465 (5)

History–Sources as a subdivision: H 2080

Government publications: H 1643 (2)

Not used under headings assigned to correspondence: H 1480 (2)

Homes and haunts as a subdivision

Works about buildings: H 1334 (9)

Homilies

SEE Sermons

Hong Kong (China): H 978

Hospitals

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Hotels

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Hotlines

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Houses: H 1334 (1)

Houses, Noble

SEE Noble houses

Houses, Royal

SEE Royal houses

Housing projects

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Hurricanes

Establishing individual hurricanes: H 1560 (4)

Husbands of famous women

Biography: H 1330 (4)

- I -

Illumination artists

SEE Manuscript illuminators

Illumination of manuscripts: H 1855 (2-9, 15-18)

Illustrations as a subdivision: H 1659, H 1935 (2)

Contrasted with –**Pictorial works**: H 1659 (2)

Manuscripts: H 1855 (3-4, 6-7, 15-18)

Illustrators

Artists as illustrators: H 1250 (10)

Imaginary persons

SEE Fictitious characters

Immigrants: H 1581 (2-3, 5)

Biography: H 1581 (3)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1100

Geographic subdivision: H 1581 (2)

Particular ethnic groups: H 1581 (3,5)

Immigrants' descendants

Particular ethnic groups: H 1581 (3)

Immigration

SEE Emigration and immigration

Immigration policy

SEE **Emigration and immigration–Government policy** as a subdivision

Immigration stations

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Imprints as a subdivision: H 1660

In art as a subdivision: H 362 (1); H 910 (1); H 1935 (2)

[. . .] **in art**: H 362 (1), H 910 (1), H 1935 (2)

[. . .] **in** [. . .] headings

[*class of persons*] **in** [*discipline*]: H 360

[*nationality*] **in** [*place*]

Replaced by [*nationality*] (*May Subd Geog*): H 1919.5 (1)

[*place*] **in** [. . .]: H 910

[*topic*] **in** [*topic*]

Broader terms: H 370 (9)

Contrasted with parenthetical qualifiers: H 357 (2)

In literature as a subdivision: H 362 (1); H 910 (2); H 1780 (3); H 1790 (4); H 1800 (3)

[. . .] **in literature**: H 362 (1), H 910 (2)

In motion pictures as a subdivision: H 910 (2)

[. . .] **in motion pictures**: H 910 (2)

[. . .] (**in religion, folklore, etc.**)

Discontinued: H 1998 (1)

In-service training as a subdivision: H 2217 (2)

[. . .] **in textbooks**: H 2187 (2)

[. . .] **in the Bible**: H 1295

Incunabula

SEE Early works

Indexes

Treated as supplementary works: H 2145

Indexes as a subdivision: **H 1670**

Indian reservations

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12), H 1925

Indians

SEE ALSO Tribes (Ethnic groups)

Folklore: H 1627 (3, 6)

–**History–Chronology**: H 1367 (2)

Indigenous tribes of the United States

As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (7)

–**Music**: H 1917 (2)

–**Philosophy**: H 1929

Qualifiers for subject headings: H 320, H 351

Systems of law: H 1718 (1)

–**Wars**

As broader term for battles: H 1285 (3)

Indians of the United States, Newspapers of: H 1920 (2)

Indigenous peoples: H 1103 (1)

Indigenous tribes of the United States
 As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (7)

Indirect subdivision
 SEE Geographic subdivisions

Individual persons
 SEE Names of persons

Individual works of art: H 1250 (12)
 Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Industries
 Based on products: H 1673
 –**Directories:** H 1558 (3)
 Pattern headings: H 1153

Influence as a subdivision: H 1580 (1), **H 1675** (1)
 [...], **Influence of:** H 1580 (1)
Influence of as a subdivision
 Discontinued: H 1580 (1), H 1675 (1)
 [...], **Influence of [...]** on: H 1580 (1)
Influence on [...] as a subdivision
 Discontinued: H 1580 (1), H 1675 (1)
 [...] **influences** as a subdivision: H 1580 (1), H 1675 (2-3)
 Broader terms: H 1675 (3)
 Folklore materials: H 1627 (3)

Information services: H 1675.5
Information services as a subdivision: H 1675.5

Ingredients for cooking: H 1475 (2)
 Establishing headings: H 1475 (4)

Initial articles in subject headings
 SEE Articles in the initial position in subject headings

Initialisms: Appendix A (2)

Inquisition: H 1676

Inspection as a subdivision: H 1676.5

Institutions, Educational
 SEE Educational institutions, Individual
 Educational institutions, Types of

Instruction and study as a subdivision: H 2110 (3)
 Musical compositions: H 1160 (8)
 Musical instruments: H 1161

Instructional materials, Music: H 1916.3 (3, 7)

Instrumental ensembles in music form/genre headings: H 250 (1, 7), H 1917.5 (8, 18-25)

Instruments, Musical
 SEE Musical instruments

Insulin
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1149

Insurrections

Pattern heading: H 1200

Intelligence testing as a subdivision: H 2186 (1)

Interchanges, Express highway: H 2098 (3)

Internal migration

SEE **Migration, Internal**

International agency publications: H 1643 (1)

International bodies of water

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Geographic qualifiers: H 810 (7)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (6)

International conventions (Treaties): H 2227 (4)

International organizations

Regions based on: H 760 (4)

International relations: H 1942 (1)

Internet resources

Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (4)

Interviews as a subdivision: H 1678

Invasions

Formulating headings: H 1592

Inverted word order

Topical subject headings: H 306

Islam: H 1680

[. . .], **Islamic:** H 1680

Islamic law

Dividing headings geographically: H 1718

Islands: H 807

Buildings and structures on: H 1334 (4)

Entities on: H 810 (5-6), H 807 (9)

Established as name headings if jurisdictional: H 807 (1)

Established as subject headings if non-jurisdictional: H 405 (13), H 807 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Geographic qualifiers: H 807 (1-3)

Geographic subdivision: H 807 (6-9)

Subject usage information

In name authority records: H 835 (1-3)

In subject authority records: H 836

Parks coextensive with islands: H 1925 (5)

[. . .] **Region**

Headings not constructed for regions based on islands: H 760 (1)

Subject heading proposals: H 807 (1-5)

Islands of the Caribbean

Geographic subdivision: H 807 (8)

- J -

Japanese subject headings (Non-Roman): H 182

Jazz: **H 1916.5**, H 1917.5 (12)

Jerusalem: H 980

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (7)

Metropolitan Area: H 790 (1, 3)

Jesuits

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1186

Jesus Christ

Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)

–**Trial**: H 2228 (2)

Jewish as a qualifier: H 306 (1); H 320 (1)

Jewish way of life: H 2015.5 (1)

Jurisdictional mergers and splits: H 710

Jurisdictions

SEE Geographic name headings

Jurisdictions, Ancient (other than cities)

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Juvenile dictionaries

SEE **Dictionaries, Juvenile** as a subdivision

Juvenile drama: H 1690 (2), H 1780 (2)

Juvenile fiction: H 1690 (2), H 1790 (2)

Juvenile films: H 1690 (2-3)

Juvenile literature as a subdivision: H 1690

–**Juvenile literature–Bibliography**: H 1690 (4)

–**Periodicals–Juvenile literature**: H 1927 (1)

Juvenile materials: H 180 (2), **H 1690**

Juvenile poetry: H 1690 (2), H 1800 (2)

Juvenile software: H 1690 (3)

Juvenile sound recordings: H 1690 (2-3)

Juvenile textbooks: H 1690 (1), H 2187 (3)

- K -

Kazakstan: H 1023 (2-4)

Kingdoms

SEE Historic kingdoms

Kings and rulers as a subdivision: H 1574 (2-3, 5)

SEE ALSO Rulers and statesmen

Koran: H 1300

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1188

Korean subject headings (Non-Roman): H 182
Kosovo (Republic): H 1055
Kyrgyzstan: H 1023 (4)

- L -

Labor laws and legislation

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1154.5

Laboratories

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Lakes

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Geographic qualifiers: H 810

Lakes in cities: H 810 (5)

Land grants

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Land vehicles

Pattern heading: H 1195

Landslides

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Language dictionaries: H 1540

Language of vocal texts: H 250 (4-5), H 1916.3 (2, 5), H 1917 (1, 4-5)

Language qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (2)

Language teachers

–**Training of:** H 2217 (1)

Languages

SEE **English language**

Foreign languages, Subject headings for

French language

Romance languages

Languages, Computer

SEE ALSO **Machine translating** as a subdivision

Established as subject headings: H 405 (10)

Latest name of political jurisdictions: H 708 (1), H 830 (4)

Latin America: H 985

Latvia: H 1023 (2-4)

Law and legislation as a subdivision: H 1705

Not used in headings qualified by legal systems: H 1718 (2)

Law, Constitutional: H 1465 (2-3)

Law headings

SEE Legal headings

Law, Systems of: H 1718

LC data base

Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (4)

LC patterns for subject heading proposals

Citing in subject authority records: H 200 (9, 18), H 202 (1-2)

LCSH

SEE Subject authority records

Legal headings

SEE ALSO **Cases** as a subdivision

Digests as a subdivision

Law and legislation as a subdivision

Legal research as a subdivision

Legal status, laws, etc. as a subdivision

Research as a subdivision

Safety regulations as a subdivision

Treaties

Trials

Broader terms

Headings qualified by legal systems: H 370 (10)

Great Britain as geographic subdivision: H 955 (2-3)

–**History–Sources:** H 2080 (4)

–**Legal research:** H 1710

–**Legal status, laws, etc.:** H 1705

Pattern heading: H 1154.5

–**Sources:** H 2080 (4)

Systems of law: H 1718

–**Terminology:** H 2184 (2)

Legal materials: H 1705-H1715

Legal research as a subdivision: H 1710

Legal status, laws, etc. as a subdivision: H 1705

Not used in headings qualified by legal systems: H 1718 (2)

Legendary characters: H 1627 (6), H 1795

SEE ALSO Fictitious characters

Established as subject headings: H 1795 (1)

Subject headings proposals: H 1795 (1)

Tagging in subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Legendary objects: H 1627 (6), H 1795 (1)

Legends: H 1627 (6), H 1795 (2)

SEE ALSO **Romances**

History and criticism: H 1795 (3)

Legends involving religious objects: H 1627 (6), H 1795 (1)

Qualifying by names of religions: H 1627 (6)

Legends, Medieval

SEE **Legends**

Legends as a subdivision

Legends and stories as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 1720 (1)

Legends as a subdivision: H 1627 (3-4, 6), H 1795 (2-3)

SEE ALSO **Romances** as a subdivision

Legislation: H 1715

Legislative enactments: H 1715

Legislative bodies

Pattern heading: H 1155

Legislative history as a subdivision: H 1715 (3)

Legislative histories: H 1715 (3)

Letters, Foreign: Appendix C

Letters as a literary genre: H 1480 (3)

Letters of individual persons

SEE Correspondence of individual persons

Libraries

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

Library as a subdivision: H 1361 (1), H 1427 (1), H 1855 (8)

Library catalogs: H 1361

SEE ALSO Audiovisual materials–Catalogs

Manuscript collections–Catalogs

Microform catalogs

Union catalogs

[*specific form of library material*] as a subdivision

Periodicals: H 1361 (1)

Library districts

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Library of Congress Subject Headings

SEE Subject authority records

Librettos as a subdivision: H 1160 (7), H 2190 (2)

Lighthouses

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Literary authors, Groups of

Pattern heading: H 1155.2

Qualifying by ethnic group: H 351 (2)

Qualifying by nationality: H 350 (2)

Literary authors, Individual

"Base heading" for authors who write under various names: H 430 (3)

Biography: H 1330 (2)

Facsimiles of manuscripts: H 1595 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110

Literary authors, Individual (*Continued*)

–**History–Chronology:** H 1367 (2)

–**Sources:** H 2080 (3)

Translations: H 2220

Literary collections as a subdivision

Fictitious characters: H 1610 (2)

Place names: H 910 (2)

Literary prizes: H 1265

Literary works, Individual

SEE ALSO Literatures

specific literary genres

Entered under author

Pattern heading: H 1155.6

Entered under title:

Pattern heading: H 1155.8

Manuscripts: H 1855 (5-6)

Literature

Classification numbers in subject authority records for literature headings: H 365 (2)

Collections from one place in two or more languages: H 1828

General overview of subject heading assignment: H 1775

Literature, English

SEE **English literature**

Literature, Folk

SEE Folk literature

Literature, Juvenile

SEE **Juvenile literature** as a subdivision

Literature teachers

–**Training of:** H 2217 (1)

Literatures

SEE ALSO Literary works, Individual

specific literatures and genres

Pattern heading: H 1156

Period subdivisions: H 1156 (2)

–**Sources:** H 2080 (3)

Translations: H 2220

Literatures as a subdivision: H 1828

Lithuania: H 1023 (2-4)

Liturgical texts set to music: H 250 (2), H 1916.3 (5)

Liturgical works

SEE Religious works

Liturgy as a subdivision: H 1855 (4, 13-18)

–**Texts:** H 2190 (3)

Local history: H 1845

Headings requiring [*place*]-[*topic*] as an additional heading: H 1845 (3)

Subdivisions under place names for local history materials: H 1845 (1)

Local subdivision of subject headings

SEE Geographic subdivisions

Locks (Hydraulic engineering)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Locomotives

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

London, England:

Buildings and structures in: H 1334 (5)

Longitudinal studies as a subdivision: H 1848

- M -

Macedonia (Republic): H 1055

Machine translating as a subdivision: H 2219 (2)

Malay as an adjective: H 987 (1-2)

Malaya: H 987

Malayan as an adjective: H 987 (2)

Malaysia: H 987

Qualification of geographic headings: H 810 (1)

Abbreviations of states: H 810 (9)

Malaysian as an adjective: H 987 (2)

Manners and customs: H 2057

Manors

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Mansions

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Manuals, Amateurs'

SEE **Amateurs' manuals** as a subdivision

Manuscript collections: H 1855 (8, 19-21)

Catalogs: H 1361 (4-6)

Manuscript illuminators: H 1855 (9)

Manuscripts, Facsimile editions of

SEE Facsimiles of manuscripts

Manuscripts, Illumination of

SEE Illumination of manuscripts

Manuscripts, Individual: H 1855

Text with important illustrations: H 1855 (15-18)

Manuscripts, Music: H 1595 (2)

Map collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Maps: H 1865
 –**Early works to 1800:** H 1576 (1)
 Facsimiles: H 1595 (2)
MARC tagging
 Subject authority records: H 200
Market buildings
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)
Marketing as a subdivision: H 1870
Markets
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
Mary, Blessed Virgin, Saint
 Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)
Mass media
 –**Reviews:** H 2021 (2)
Massacres
 Formulating headings: H 1592
 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)
Materials
 Pattern heading: H 1158
(*May Subd Geog*)
 SEE Geographic subdivisions
Medals: H 1265
Medical statistics: H 2095 (1-2)
Medicine, Popular: H 1943.5 (1)
Medieval cities
 SEE Extinct cities (pre-1500)
Medieval legends
 SEE **Legends**
 Legends as a subdivision
Medium of performance of musical works: H 250 (1-3, 5-9), H 1916.3 (3-4), **H 1917.5**, H 1918 (6-9)
 Headings governed by patterns: H 250 (7-11)
Meetings
 SEE Congresses
Mental health as a subdivision: H 1890 (1)
Mental health services as a subdivision: H 1890 (2)
Mergers of two or more jurisdictions into one: H 710
Metals
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1158
Methodology as a subdivision
 Forecasting: H 1628 (1-2)
 Genealogy: H 1631 (2)
Methods as a subdivision: H 1161 (2)

[. . .] **Metropolitan Area:** H 362 (1), **H 790** (1-3), H 1140 (6)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Microform catalogs: H 1361 (3-4)

Publishers' catalogs: H 1965

Microforms: H 1893

Migration, Internal: H 1581 (4)

Migration, Return: H 1581 (4)

Military engagements

Formulating headings: H 1592

Military expeditions

Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Military installations, Active

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Military installations, Inactive

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Military invasions

SEE Invasions

Military occupations

Formulating headings: H 1592

Military raids

SEE Raids

Military relations as a subdivision: H 1996

Military services

Pattern headings: H 1159

Regimental histories: H 1995

Military units

Regimental histories: H 1995

Mine buildings

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Mines

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Miniature books: H 1895

–**Specimens:** H 1895

Miniature paintings of manuscripts

SEE Illumination of manuscripts

Mining districts

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Mints

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Miscellanea as a subdivision: H 1910

Model headings

SEE Pattern headings

Moldova: H 1023 (2-4)

Monasteries

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Monastic orders

Adjectival qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (1)

–**Controversial literature:** H 1472 (1)

Monastic and religious life: H 2015.5 (1)

Pattern heading: H 1186

Montenegro: H 1055

Months, Special: H 1592

Monuments: H 1334 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1334.5 (1)

Subject heading proposals for national monuments: H 1925

Monuments as a subdivision

Individual persons: H 1334 (10)

Moon

SEE Celestial bodies

Moral and ethical aspects as a subdivision: H 1949, H 1998 (4)

Morgues

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Mosques

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Motels

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Motion pictures: H 2230

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Mountain ranges

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (6)

Mountains

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Muhammad, Prophet, d. 632

Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)

Multifaceted careers, Persons with

Biography: H 1330 (3)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110 (2-3)

Multilingual dictionaries: H 1540

Multiple subdivisions: H 1090

Religion headings: H 1998, H 2015

Subject heading proposals: H 1090 (2)

Religion headings: H 1998 (2), H 2015 (2)

Museums: H 1916

Established as name headings: H 405 (8), H 1916

Museums as a subdivision: H 1916 (1)

Music

SEE ALSO Folk music

Jazz

Popular music

Accompaniment in form/genre headings: H 250 (8-9), H 1917.5 (10, 13, 15, 21-22, 24-25, 27, 31, 34-38)

Authority records: H 250, H 1917.5 (5-8, 10-12, 14-16, 18, 21-23, 28-30, 33, 37)

By individual composers: H 1438

Common concepts in subject headings: H 1916.3 (2-9)

Dance music headings: H 250 (5)

Ethnic, national, and religious groups: H 1917

For occasions (religious seasons, holidays, festivals, etc.): H 1160 (5), H 1916.3 (2, 4)

Form/genre headings: H 250, H 1160, H 1916.3 (3), **H 1917.5**

General: H 1916.3

Headings governed by patterns: H 250 (7-11)

–**Instruction and study:** H 1160 (8), H 2110 (3)

Instructional materials: H 1916.3 (3, 7), H 1918 (9-10)

Inverted headings: H 306 (4)

Literature and other materials about: H 1160 (3-4), H 1161, H 1916.3 (6-8), H 1917, H 1918 (9-10)

Medium of performance in headings: H 250 (1-3, 5-9), H 1916.3 (3-4), **H 1917.5**, H 1918 (6-9)

Pattern headings

For free floating subdivisions

Musical compositions: H 1160, H 2075, H 2190 (2)

Musical instruments: H 250 (9, 11), H 1161

For musical compositions: H 250 (7-11)

Qualifiers for music headings: H 250 (3-5, 10-11), H 306 (4), H 1917.5 (11-17, 24-25, 29-35, 37-38)

Subject heading assignment: H 250 (5), H 1160, H 1161, H 1438 (2), H 1916.3 (3-9), H 1917 (1-5), H 1917.5 (9, 11, 21-22, 24-25, 27-38), H 1918 (6-10), H 2075, H 2190 (2)

Subject heading proposals: H 250 (1-6), H 1917.5 (5-8, 10-12, 14-16, 22-24, 28, 37), H 1918

Music, Folk

SEE Folk music

Music, Popular: H 1916.5

Music, Vocal

SEE Vocal music headings

Music and songs

SEE **Songs and music** as a subdivision: H 2075

Music and the war [revolution, etc.] as a subdivision: H 2075 (4)

(Music) as a qualifier: H 250 (5), H 1916.3 (5), H 1918 (3, 6)

Music as a subdivision: H 1917 (1-2)

Music halls

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Music heading authority records: H 250

SEE ALSO "Subject heading proposals" under Music

Music manuscripts: H 1595 (2)

Music of ethnic groups: H 1916.3 (2, 6), **H 1917**

Music of national groups: H 1916.3 (6), **H 1917**

Music of religious groups: H 1916.3 (6), **H 1917**

Musical compositions

SEE ALSO Folk music

Jazz

Music

Popular music

Pattern heading: H 1160

Musical format subdivisions: H 250 (9), H 1160 (6-8), H 1916.3 (3, 6)

(Musical instrument) as a qualifier: H 1918 (3, 7)

Musical instrument collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Musical instruments: H 1918

Brands and models: H 1918 (8-10)

–**Catalogs and collections:** H 1360 (3), H 1427 (2)

Classification numbers in subject authority records: H 365 (2), H 1918 (5)

Ethnic and national: H 1917 (1, 5)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1161

In music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (5-17, 20, 24)

Keyboard: H 1917.5 (9-10, 12-15, 21, 34, 36)

Non-musical objects used as: H 1918 (6)

Number of the same solo instrument in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (10-17)

Order, in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (9-10, 27, 31, 35)

Parts of instruments and accessories: H 1918 (6)

Pattern heading: H 1161

Percussion: H 1917.5 (9, 16-17, 22)

Qualifiers: H 1917.5 (3-6, 15-16), H 1918 (3, 6-8)

Subject heading assignment: H 1917 (1-5), H 1918 (6-10)

Subject heading proposals: H 250 (9-10), H 1917.5 (5-7, 10-12, 14-16, 22-24, 28, 30, 33, 37),
H 1918

Unspecified: H 1917.5 (9-10, 15)

Musical presentation subdivisions: H 250 (9), H 1160 (5-7), H 1916.3 (3, 6)

Musical settings as a subdivision: H 1160 (3, 6), H 2075 (1)

Musical style: H 250 (1-3), H 1160 (5), H 1161 (2), H 1916.3 (5), H 1916.5 (1-2), H 1917 (1, 3)

Qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (3)

Musicians

Composers: H 1438

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110

Muslim as an adjective: H 1680
Mutinies
 Formulating headings: H 1592
Mythological characters: H 1795 (2)
Mythology as a subdivision: H 1998 (4)

- N -

Name as a subdivision: H 1919 (1)
Name authority record proposals made by subject catalogers
 SEE Proposals for name authority records made by subject catalogers
Name authority records
 SEE ALSO Name headings
 AACR2 coding: H 405 (3-4), H 430 (1-2)
 Categories of headings established as name or subject headings: H 405
 Citing name authority records in subject authority records: H 203 (4)
 Corporate bodies
 Dividing by place: H 364 (5), **H 475**
 Name changes: H 460
 Provisional, Name headings coded: H 436
 Requests by subject catalogers for name authority records: H 405 (3)
 "Subj Cat Manual/AACR2" notation: H 405 (4)
 Subject usage information: H 432, H 708
 Geographic subdivision information: H 835
 Validity of headings for subject use: H 430
Name changes
 Corporate bodies: H 460
 Political jurisdictions: H 708 (1), H 830 (4)
Name headings
 SEE ALSO Geographic name headings
 Name authority records
 Abbreviations: Appendix A
 Capitalization: Appendix B (1)
 Diacritics and special characters: Appendix C (1)
 Categories of headings established as name or subject headings: H 405
 "General see also" references to types of name headings: H 371 (2, 4)
Name changes
 Corporate bodies: H 460
 Political jurisdictions: H 708 (1), H 830 (4)
Punctuation: Appendix D (3-4)
Requests by subject catalogers for name authority records: H 405 (3)
Validity for subject use: H 430

Name headings, Provisional: H 436

Name-title subject headings

SEE ALSO Uniform titles as subject headings

Commentaries: H 1435 (2-3)

Composers and works about music of individual composers: H 1438 (2)

–**History** not used: H 1647 (2)

–**Indexes**: H 1670 (2-3)

Named entities

Buildings and structures: H 1334

Established as name or subject headings: H 405

Events: H 1592

Geographic entities: H 690

Parks: H 1925

–**Songs and music**: H 1160 (3, 6), H 1916.3 (4), **H 2075**

Street and roads: H 2098

Strikes and lockouts: H 2100

Names, Biological

SEE Biological names

Names, Family

SEE Family names

Names, Geographical: H 1630

SEE ALSO Geographic name headings

Geographic subject headings

Names, Personal

SEE Names of persons

Names as a subdivision: H 1919

Names of corporate bodies

SEE Corporate bodies

Geographic name headings

Name headings

Names of families

SEE Family names

Names of legislative acts: H 1715

Names of persons

SEE ALSO Correspondence of individual persons

Name authority records

Name headings

Literary authors, Individual

Assignment as subject heading: H 1110 (1)

Bibliographies: H 1322

Biography: H 1330

Assignment as subject heading to non-biographical works: H 1330 (5)

Drama: H 1780 (3)

Names of persons

Assignment as subject heading (*Continued*)

Fiction: H 1790 (4)

Music: H 1438, H 1916.3 (4), H 2075

Poetry: H 1800 (3)

Composers and works about music of individual composers: H 1438

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110

Persons with multifaceted careers: H 1110 (2-3)

–**History–Chronology:** H 1367 (2)

–**Museums:** H 1916 (2)

Named events focused on an individual person: H 1592 (6)

Pictorial works: H 1935 (2)

–**Sources:** H 2080 (3)

Names of places

SEE ALSO Geographic name headings

Geographic subject headings

Dictionaries (Gazetteers): H 1630

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Narrower terms

Changing references: H 195 (1-2)

Procedure for making: H 200 (7)

NARS

SEE Name authority records

National monuments

SEE Monuments

National parks: H 1925 (2-4)

Nationalities: H 1919.5

Folklore: H 1627 (2-3, 7)

–**Foreign countries:** H 1919.5 (2, 4)

Free-floating subdivisions under: **H 1103**, H 1919.5 (2)

Free-floating subdivisions under headings for classes of persons with national
qualifiers: H 1100

Qualifiers for subject headings: H 320, H 350

National and ethnic qualifiers not used for headings in the field of music: H 1917 (4)

Subject heading proposals: H 1919.5 (1)

Nationalities, Music of

SEE Music of national groups

Nationalities in the United States

SEE Ethnic groups in the United States

Nationality qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (2), H 320, H 350

Not used for headings in the field of music: H 1917 (4)

Native Americans

SEE Indians

- Natural disasters
 - SEE* Disasters
 - specific types of disasters
- Natural features in cities
 - Qualifying subject headings: H 810 (5)
- Natural history collections** as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)
- Natural language
 - Topical subject headings: H 306
- Natural objects
 - Catalogs and collections:** H 1360 (3), H 1427 (2)
- Nature conservation areas
 - SEE* Parks
- New subject heading proposals
 - SEE* Subject heading proposals
- New York (N.Y.):** H 990
 - City sections, boroughs, counties: H 990 (2)
 - Metropolitan Area: H 362 (1), H 790 (1,3), H 990 (1)
 - Region: H 790 (4)
- New Zealand
 - Abbreviation as a geographic qualifier: H 810 (11)
- Newspapers**
 - Directories:** H 1558 (4)
 - Sections, columns, etc.–Reviews:** H 2021 (2)
- Newspapers** as a subdivision: H 1920
- Newspapers about specific places: H 1920 (1)
- Newspapers of ethnic groups in the United States: H 1920
- Newspapers of Indians of the United States: H 1920 (2)
- Newspapers on special topics: H 1920
- Night clubs
 - Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
- Noble houses
 - Subject heading proposals: H 1574 (4)
- Non-English languages
 - SEE* Foreign languages, Subject headings in
 - Foreign languages, Subject headings for
- Non-fiction films: H 1913 (1)
- Non-fiction radio programs: H 1969.5 (1)
- Non-fiction television programs: H 1913 (1)
- Non-free-floating subdivisions
 - SEE* Subdivisions
- Non-jurisdictional corporate body headings
 - SEE* Corporate bodies

Non-jurisdictional geographic headings
 SEE Geographic subject headings
Non-jurisdictional islands
 SEE Islands
Non-music sound recordings: H 2230
Non-Roman Arabic/Persian subject headings: H 181
Non-Roman CJK subject headings: H 182
"Nonprint" headings: H 1332 (5)
Northern, Southern, Central, etc., as a qualifiers:
 Headings for regions: H 760 (4, 5)
Northern Ireland
 Geographic subdivision: H 955 (1)
 Law cataloging: H 955 (2-3)
(*Not Subd Geog*)
 Coding headings: H 364 (2-4)
NTs
 SEE Narrower terms
Number of choral parts in chorus music headings: H 1917.5 (34)
Number of solo vocal parts in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (29-31)
Number of the same instrument in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (11, 14-17)
Numerals
 Abbreviations: Appendix A (6-7)
Numeric tags: H 200
Numismatic collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)
Nursery rhymes: H 1800 (2)
 Literary genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)
Nursing homes
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

- O -

Observatories
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
Occupational groups
 Folklore: H 1627 (3)
 –**Education**: H 2217 (2)
 –**Professional ethics**: H 1949
 –**Training of**: H 2217 (1-2)
Occupations
 Formulating headings: H 1592
Ocean currents
 Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Oceans

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Office buildings

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Official residences

Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Old age homes

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Old Catalog headings

Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (5)

On postage stamps as a subdivision: H 1945

Online subject authority records

SEE Subject authority records

Opera houses

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Operas

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1160

–**History and criticism** not used: H 1160 (4)

Order of instruments in music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (9-10, 27)

Order of subdivisions in a subject heading string: H 1075 (4-6)

Order of subject headings: H 80

Orders, Monastic

SEE Monastic orders

Orders, Religious

SEE Religious orders

Ordinal numerals

SEE Numerals

Organizations

SEE Corporate bodies

Organs as a subdivision

Musical instruments: H 1918 (4)

Organs of the body

Pattern heading: H 1164

"Orphan" subject headings: H 370 (3-4)

Orphanages

Established as name headings: H 405 (7)

"OSER" file

SEE "MAGS" file

- P -

Pageants

Established as name headings: H 1592 (2)

Palaces

SEE ALSO Buildings and structures

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Palestine: H 980 (2)

Palestinian National Authority: H 980 (3)

Parades

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Parenthetical qualifiers in subject headings: H 357

Music: H 250 (3, 5, 10-11), H 1916.3 (3-5), H 1916.5 (1), H 1917.5

Musical instruments: H 1161 (2), H 1918 (2, 6-8)

Park districts

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Parks: H 1925

SEE ALSO City parks

National parks

As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (4), H 1925 (6)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14), H 690 (1)

Subject heading proposals: H 1925 (2-5)

Use of vernacular: H 1925 (2)

Parks (Administrative agencies)

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Partial biography: H 1330 (5)

Partial title added entries: **H 150**

Named collections of objects: H 1427 (3)

Participation, [. . .] as a subdivision: H 1200 (1-2)

Parts of the body

Singular vs. plural: H 285 (1)

Pattern headings: H 1146

SEE ALSO specific pattern headings

As examples in "General see also" references: **H 371** (9), H 1146 (1, 2)

Establishing new subdivisions under: H 1146 (2-3)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1147-H 1200

Music headings governed by: H 250 (7-11)

Pavilions

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Peoples, Ancient

SEE Ancient peoples

People's Republic of China

SEE China

Performing arts

SEE ALSO Drama

Music

–**Reviews:** H 2021 (2)

Period subdivisions

SEE Chronological subdivisions

Periodicals as a subdivision: **H 1927**, H 2060

Form subdivisions not further subdivided by –**Periodicals:** H 1927 (2)

Periodicals, Bibliographies of: H 1927 (2)

Periodicals, Catalogs of: H 1361 (1)

Periodicals, Electronic: H 1580.5

Persian subject headings (Non-Roman): H 181

Personal correspondence

SEE Correspondence of individual persons

Personal names

SEE Names of persons

Personal narratives as a subdivision: H 1480 (2), H 1538 (2), **H 1928**

Persons, Classes of

SEE Classes of persons

Persons, Names of

SEE Names of persons

Pets

Biography: H 1720

Philosophers

–**Philosophy** not used under names of individual philosophers: H 1929

Philosophy headings

Usage of –**History** under: H 1647 (5)

Photograph collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Photographs as a subdivision: H 1935 (3)

Photographs from space as a subdivision: H 1210.5 (2)

Photography: H 1935 (2)

Photography, Aerial: H 1210.5

Photography, Artistic: H 1255

Photography, Portrait: H 1255 (2)

Photography, Space: H 1210.5 (2)

Phrase headings

SEE ALSO [. . .] **and** [. . .] headings

Free-floating terms and phrases

[. . .] **in** [. . .] headings

Broader terms: H 370 (6-9)

Phrase headings vs. subdivisions

[. . .] **and** [. . .] headings: H 310

Established phrase headings vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1095 (2)

Piano

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1161

Pictorial works as a subdivision: H 1935

Picture dictionaries: H 1540 (4)

Pipelines

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Place names

SEE ALSO Geographic name headings

Geographic subject headings

Biography: H 1330 (4)

Dictionaries (Gazetteers)

SEE Gazetteers

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Local history and genealogical source material: H 1845

Newspapers: H 1920 (1)

Used as topical subdivisions

Subfield coding: H 830 (10)

Plains

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Planetariums

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Planets

SEE Celestial bodies

Planned communities

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Plans (Programs)

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Plants

SEE ALSO Domestic plants

Assigning classification numbers: H 1332 (5)

Establishing biological names: H 1332 (1-6)

Headings previously unprinted in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*: H 1332 (5)

Geographic subdivision allowed at any taxonomic level: H 1332 (5)

Pattern heading: H 1180

Subject heading proposals: H 1332

Playgrounds

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Plays

SEE Drama

Plays, Children's

SEE Juvenile drama

Plazas: H 1334 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Plural vs. singular form of subject headings: H 285
 Animals: H 1332 (2)
 [. . .] as [. . .] headings: H 360
 Musical compositions: H 250 (1), H 1160 (3-4), H 1917.5 (8)
 Musical instruments: H 250 (9-10), H 1917.5 (8), H 1918 (1-3, 6-7)
 Parts of the body: H 285 (1)
 Plants: H 1332 (2)
 Products: H 285 (1)
 Poetry: H 1800
 Poetry, Children's
 SEE Juvenile poetry
 Poetry, Folk
 SEE Folk poetry
Poetry as a subdivision: H 1800 (1)
 Fictitious characters: H 1610 (2)
 Place names: H 910 (2)
 Poets
 SEE Literary authors, Groups
 Literary authors, Individual
 Police stations
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)
Political activity as a subdivision: H 1942 (3)
Political aspects as a subdivision: H 1942 (3)
 Political divisions of countries
 SEE Geographic name headings—First order political divisions of countries
 Political history
 SEE **Politics and government** as a subdivision
 Political incidents
 Formulating headings: H 1592
 Political jurisdictions
 SEE Geographic name headings
Political participation: H 1942 (3)
Political science: H 1942 (1)
 Politicians
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110
Politics, Practical: H 1942 (3)
Politics and government as a subdivision: H 1942
 Polyglot dictionaries: H 1540 (2-4)
 Pools, Public
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)
 Poorhouses
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)
 Popular music: H 1916.5

Popular works as a subdivision: H 1943.5

Port authorities

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Portals as building details

SEE Building details

Portrait photography: H 1255 (2)

Portraits as a subdivision: H 1935 (2)

Ports

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Possessions

SEE **Territories and possessions** as a subdivision

Post offices

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Postage stamps on specific topics: H 1945

Poster collections: H 1945.5 (3)

Poster collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Posters: H 1945.5

Qualifying by nationalities: H 1945.5 (2)

Posters, Travel

SEE Travel posters

Posters as a subdivision: H 1945.5

Posthouses

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Power plants

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Preaching: H 2032 (4)

Prehistoric periods and cultures: H 1225 (2)

Prepositional phrase headings

SEE Phrase headings

Presidential mansions

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Presidents

SEE Rulers and statesmen

Princes: H 1574 (2)

Princesses: H 1574 (2)

Prisons

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Private book collections

SEE **Library** as a subdivision

Private collections: H 1427 (2-4)

Private collections as a subdivision: H 1360 (3), H 1427

Use of geographic subdivision for location of collection: H 1427 (1)

Prizes: H 1265

Products

Singular vs. plural: H 285 (1)

Professional ethics: H 1949

Professional ethics as a subdivision: H 1949

Programs (Plans)

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Programs, Computer

SEE Computer programs, Individual

Projects

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Proper names

SEE Name headings

Proposals for name authority records made by subject catalogers

Adding 781 fields: H 835 (2-3)

Dividing corporate name headings geographically: H 475

Proposals for subject headings

SEE Subject heading proposals

"Subject heading proposals" as a subtopic under specific topics

Proverbs

Literary genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)

Provinces as a subdivision: H 713

Provisional name headings: H 436

Provisional subject headings: H 1334 (2)

Psychological testing as a subdivision: H 2186

Public buildings

Broader terms: H 1334 (7)

Public celebrations

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Public comfort stations

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Public opinion as a subdivision: H 1955

Public pools

Established as subject headings: H 405 (12)

Publishers' catalogs: H 1965

Publishers' imprints

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Pueblos

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Puerto Rico

Abbreviation as geographic qualifier: H 810 (11)

Punctuation: Appendix D

Headings using free-floating terms and phrases: H 362 (3)

Music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (26)

[. . .] **Region** headings: H 362 (3), H 760 (1)

Purges

Formulating headings: H 1592

- Q -

Qualifiers, Geographic

SEE Geographic qualifiers

Qualifiers, Parenthetical, in subject headings

SEE Parenthetical qualifiers in subject headings

Qualifiers, Subject heading

SEE Subject heading qualifiers

Quarters of cities: H 720

Established as name headings: H 405 (5), H 720 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Geographic subdivision: H 720 (2), **H 830 (4)**

Queens: H 1574 (2)

Questions and answers: H 1910

Quotations as a subdivision: H 1969

Quotations, maxims, etc. as a subdivision: H 1969

- R -

Races (Contests)

Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Racetracks

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Radio genre/form headings: H 1969.5

Radio programs

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Raids

Formulating headings: H 1592

Railroads: H 1970

Established as name headings: H 405 (9), H 1970 (1)

Railway stations

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Ranches

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Readers: H 1975

Readers as a subdivision: H 1975

Reading films, Juvenile

SEE Juvenile films

Reading interests: H 1333

Recipes: H 1475

Recordings, Catalogs of

SEE **Audiotape catalogs** as a subdivision

Discography as a subdivision

Film catalogs as a subdivision

Recordings, Juvenile sound

SEE Juvenile sound recordings

Recreation areas

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Recreation districts

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Recruiting, enlistment, etc. as a subdivision

Subdividing by wars: H 1159 (2)

Reference books: H 1980

Bibliographies: H 1980 (2-3)

References

SEE Broader terms

Narrower terms

Related terms

"Used for" references

Referrals to descriptive catalogers

Requests to have named entities established: H 405 (3)

Refugee camps

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Regimental histories as a subdivision: H 1995

Regions, Geographic

City regions: H 362 (2), **H 790** (1, 4)

Extinct cities: H 715 (3); H 760 (1)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Constructing headings with the free-floating term [. . .] **Region:** H 362 (2-3), **H 760**

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1140

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (6)

Regions based on international organizations: H 760 (4)

Regions based on rivers: H 362 (2), **H 800** (8), H 1145.5 (2)

Regions as a subdivision: H 713

Regions of the body

Pattern heading: H 1164

Registers of births, etc.: H 1631 (2), H 1845 (2)

Reigns

Formulating headings: H 1592

Related terms: H 370 (10-12)

Changing references: H 195 (1-2)

Keying in subject authority records: H 200 (6-7, 16)

Moving image genre/form headings: H 1913 (4)

Radio genre/form headings: H 1969.5 (3)

Relations as a subdivision: H 1996

Relationships between two topics

[. . .] and [. . .] headings: H 310

Religion as a subdivision: H 1997

–**Religion–History** not used: H 1997 (1, 2)

Religions: H 1998, H 2015

–**Apologetic works:** H 1472 (1)

As subdivisions under –**Religions aspects:** H 1998 (2)

As subdivisions under topical headings: H 2015 (2)

Civilization: H 1370 (2)

–**Controversial literature:** H 1472 (1)

Corporate body headings established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Founders of

Biography: H 1330 (4)

Established subdivisions vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1110 (2)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110

Subdivisions for events focused on: H 1592 (6)

–**Liturgy–Texts:** H 2190 (3)

Pattern heading: H 1185

–**Rituals–Texts:** H 2190 (3)

Religious aspects as a subdivision: H 1998

Subdivided by religions and denominations: H 1998 (2-3)

Religious denominations

SEE ALSO Christian denominations

Religious sects

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Religious education textbooks: H 2187 (2)

Religious groups

Music: H 1916.3 (6), **H 1917**

Religious life: H 2015.5

SEE ALSO **Christian life**

Religious life and customs as a subdivision: H 2016

Religious life as a subdivision: H 2015.5

Religious orders

Adjectival qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (1)

–**Controversial literature:** H 1472 (1)

–**Monastic and religious life:** H 2015.5 (1)

Pattern heading: H 1186

Religious qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (1)

Religious sects: H 2015 (2)

SEE ALSO Christian denominations

–**Apologetic works:** H 1472

As subdivisions under –**Religious aspects:** H 1998 (2-3)

As subdivisions under topical headings: H 2015 (2)

–**Civilization** not used: H 1370 (2)

–**Controversial literature:** H 1472 (1)

Corporate body headings established as name headings: H 405 (8)

–**Liturgy–Texts:** H 2190 (3)

Pattern heading: H 1185

–**Rituals–Texts:** H 2190 (3)

Religious works

SEE ALSO Sacred works

–**History and criticism:** H 2190 (3)

Manuscripts: H 1855 (3, 11-18)

Remote-controlled vehicles

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Republic of China

SEE Taiwan

Republics as a subdivision: H 713

Republics of the former Soviet Union: H 1023 (2-4)

Requests to descriptive catalogers to establish named entities: H 405 (3)

Research, Legal

SEE **Legal research** as a subdivision

Research as a subdivision

Research as a subdivision: H 2020

Legal materials: H 1710

Research for subject heading proposals: H 202

Research stations

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Reservations, Indian

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Reserves

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Subject heading proposals: H 1925 (2-5)

Use of vernacular: H 1925 (2)

Reserves (Administrative agencies)
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Reservoirs
 Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Resorts
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Restaurants
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Retail stores
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Retail trade
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1153

Return migration: H 1581 (4)

Reviews as a subdivision: H 2021

Revolutions
 SEE ALSO Cultural revolutions
 Formulating headings: H 1592
 Pattern heading: H 1200

Rhymes, Nursery
 SEE Nursery rhymes

Riddles
 Literary genre vs. folklore genre: H 1627 (4)

Riots
 Formulating headings: H 1592
 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Rituals–Texts as a subdivision: H 2190 (3)

River basins
 SEE Watersheds

River deltas
 SEE Deltas

River regions: H 362 (2), **H 800** (8), H 1145.5 (2)

River valleys
 SEE ALSO Rivers
 Valleys
 Formulating headings: **H 800** (7), H 1145.5 (2)
 [. . .] **Region**
 Headings not constructed for regions based on river valleys: H 760 (1)

Rivers

SEE ALSO Estuaries

Forks of rivers

River regions

River valleys

Watersheds

Wild and scenic rivers

Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Free-floating region headings based on names of rivers: H 362 (2), **H 800** (8),
H 1145.5 (2)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Geographic subdivision: H 800 (9)

Subject heading proposals: H 800 (1-6)

Geographic qualifiers: H 800 (1-3)

References: H 800 (3-5)

Roads

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Subject heading proposals: H 2098

Geographic qualifiers: H 2098 (1-2)

Use of vernacular: H 690 (4), H 2098 (1)

Rockshelters

Subject heading proposals: H 1225 (4)

Roman gods

SEE Greek and Roman gods

Roman numerals

SEE Numerals

Romance languages

SEE ALSO Foreign languages, Subject headings for

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1154

Romances: H 1795

Romances, Arthurian

SEE Arthurian romances

Romances as a subdivision: H 1795 (2-3)

Romanization

Arabic/Persian subject headings: H 181

CJK subject headings: H 182

Greek and Hebrew letters in subject headings: Appendix C (4)

Topical headings established in foreign languages: H 315

UF references for geographic headings: H 690 (8)

Rooms as building details: H 1334 (1, 8)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Royal houses: H 1574
–**Biography** not used: H 1574 (2)
Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1120
Subject heading proposals: H 1574 (1-4)

RTs

SEE Related terms

Rulers and statesmen

SEE ALSO **Kings and rulers** as a subdivision

Biography: H 1330 (5)

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110

Russia: H 1023 (1)

Russian as adjectival qualifier

vs. **Soviet**: H 1023 (4)

- S -

Sacred texts set to music: H 250 (2), H 1916.3 (5)

Sacred works

SEE ALSO Religious works

Translations–Sacred works

specific sacred books

Commentaries: H 1435 (3)

–**Controversial literature**: H 1472 (2)

–**History–Chronology**: H 1367 (2)

Manuscripts: H 1855 (6, 11-18)

Pattern heading: H 1188

–**Textbooks**: H 2187 (1)

–**Translations**: H 1300 (1)

–**Translations into [. . .]**: H 1300 (2)

Versions or translations: **H 1300**, H 1435 (3)

Safety regulations as a subdivision: H 1705

Saint

Abbreviations: Appendix A (7-8)

Family names: H 1631 (3)

Sanatoriums

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Sanitary landfills

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Sanitation districts

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Satellites (Moons)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Satellites, Artificial
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Scandals
 Formulating headings: H 1592

Scenic rivers
 SEE Wild and scenic rivers

School districts
 Established as name headings: H 450 (9)

Schools (Educational institutions)
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Schools (Groups of people)
 Capitalization: Appendix B (8)

Schools of artists
 Capitalization: Appendix B (8)
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Scientific and technical atlases: H 1935 (3)

Scientific apparatus collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Scientific expeditions:
 Established as name headings: H 405 (6)

Scope notes: H 400
 Adding to an existing heading: H 400 (4)
 Changing an existing note: H 400 (4)
 Moving image genre/form headings: H 1913 (5)
 Proposing with a new heading: H 200 (8, 17), H 400 (4)
 Radio genre/form headings: H 1969.5 (3)
 Scope notes that allow for free-floating subdivision of headings: H 1090 (1)

Scores
 Not forwarded to the Data Integrity Section when proposing new headings:
 H 250 (11)

Scotland
 Geographic subdivision: H 955 (1)
 Law cataloging: H 955 (2-3)

Sculpture: H 1250 (2)

Seas
 Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)
 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1145.5

Sections, columns, etc.–Reviews as a subdivision: H 2021 (2)

Sects, Christian
 SEE Christian denominations

Sects, Religious
 SEE Religious sects

"See also" references

SEE Broader terms

 Narrower terms

 Related terms

"See also" references, General

SEE General see also references

"See" references

SEE "Used for" references

"See" references, General

SEE General see references

Selections

 Not used in name-title subject headings for musical works: H 1438 (2)

Serbia: H 1055

Serbia and Montenegro: H 1055

 Qualification of geographic headings: H 810 (1)

Serials, Electronic: H 1580.5

Sermons: H 2032

Service stations

 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616

 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1110

Shakespeare, William, 1564-1616. Hamlet

 Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155.6

Ships

 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Shipyards

 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Shopping centers

 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Short films: H 1913 (2)

Shows (Exhibitions)

 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Shrines

 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)

Sieges: H 1560 (2), H 1592 (8)

 Formulating headings: H 1592

Simulation methods as a subdivision: H 2040 (1), H 2110 (4)

Singular vs. plural form of subject headings: H 285

 Animals: H 1332 (2)

 [. . .] as [. . .] headings: H 360

 Musical compositions: H 250 (1), H 1160 (3-4), H 1917.5 (8)

 Musical instruments: H 250 (9-10), H 1917.5 (8), H 1918 (1-3, 6-7)

 Parts of the body: H 285 (1)

Singular vs. plural form of subject headings (*Continued*)

Plants: H 1332 (2)

Products: H 285 (1)

Sites, Archaeological

SEE Archaeological sites

653 field for uncontrolled subject terms: H 160

Slide collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

Slides: H 2230

Slides as a subdivision: H 1935 (3)

Slovenia: H 1055

Social conditions as a subdivision: H 2055

Social history

Definition and comparison with **Civilization**: H 1370 (1)

Social life and customs as a subdivision: H 2057

Folklore materials: H 1627 (1)

–**History** not used: H 2057 (1)

Period subdivisions: H 2057 (1)

Societies and clubs as a subdivision: H 2060

Societies, etc. as a subdivision: H 2060

Family names: H 1631 (8)

Socioeconomic status as a subdivision

Discontinued: H 1578 (1), H 2055 (1)

Sociological aspects as a subdivision: H 2055 (1)

Software: H 2070

Individual computer programs established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Juvenile software: H 1690 (3)

Song texts

Language: H 250 (4-5), H 1916.3 (5), H 1917 (1, 4-5)

Without the music: H 2190 (2)

Songs, Folk

SEE **Folk songs**

Songs and music as a subdivision: H 1160 (3, 6), H 1916.3 (4), H 2075

Sound recording labels

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Sound recordings

Jazz and popular music

Chronological subdivisions: H 1916.5 (3)

Juvenile: H 1690 (2-3)

Non-music: H 2230

Not forwarded to the Data Integrity Section when proposing new headings:
H 250 (11)

Sound recordings, Juvenile

SEE Juvenile sound recordings

Sound recordings, Non-music: H 2230
 Source materials: H 2080
 SEE ALSO specific types of source materials
 Bibliographies: H 2080 (4-5)
 Catalogs: H 2080 (5)
Sources as a subdivision: H 1480 (2), **H 2080**
 Government publications: H 1643 (2)
Southern, Central, Northern, etc., as qualifiers:
 Headings for regions: H 760 (4, 5)
 Sovereignities, Territorial
 SEE Territorial sovereignties
Soviet as adjectival qualifier
 vs. **Russian**: H 1023 (4)
 Soviet republics, Former: H 1023 (2-4)
 Soviet Union: H 1023 (1)
 Space exploration: H 1564 (2)
 Space photography: H 1210.5 (2)
 Space vehicles
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)
 Spanish America
 SEE Latin America
 Spas
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)
 Special characters: Appendix C
 Special days: H 1592
 Special decades: H 1592
 Special months: H 1592
 Special weeks: H 1592
 Special years: H 1592
Specifications: H 2083
Specifications as a subdivision: H 2083
 Specificity of subject headings: H 180 (2)
 Splits of jurisdictions into two or more entities: H 710
 Sports arenas
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (14)
 Sports events
 SEE ALSO specific types of sports events
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)
 Sports facilities
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)
 Spouses of famous people
 Biography: H 1330 (4)

Squadrons
 Use of –**Regimental histories:** H 1995

Stadiums
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Stagecoach stations
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Stamp collections as a subdivision: H 1427 (1)

States as a subdivision: H 713

Statesmen
 SEE Rulers and statesmen

Statistical methods as a subdivision: H 2095 (2)

Statistical services as a subdivision: H 2095 (3)

Statistics: H 2095
 Nature of work/nature of contents codes: H 2095 (3)

Statistics, Medical
 SEE Medical statistics

Statistics, Vital
 SEE Vital statistics

Statistics as a subdivision: H 2095 (1-2)

Statues
 SEE Monuments

Steppes
 Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

Stock exchanges
 Established as name headings: H 405 (8)

Stores, Retail
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Stories as a subdivision
 Discontinued: H 1790 (2)

Storms
 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Straight word order
 Topical subject headings: H 306

Street addresses
 Buildings established as street addresses: H 1334 (7)

Streets
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)
 Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)
 Subject heading proposals: H 2098
 Geographic qualifiers: H 2098 (1-2)
 Use of vernacular: H 690 (4), H 2098 (1)

Strikes: H 2100

Structures

SEE Buildings and structures

Students

Qualifying by nationality: H 350 (2)

Students–Yearbooks as a subdivision: H 2400

Studies (Research projects)

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Studies and exercises as a subdivision: H 1161 (2)

Study and teaching as a subdivision: H 2110

Area studies: H 2110 (2)

–**Activity programs**: H 2110 (4)

–**Audio-visual aids**: H 2110 (4)

–**Simulation methods**: H 2110 (4)

–**Supervision**: H 2110 (2)

Subdivision, Geographic

SEE Geographic subdivisions

Subdivision, Indirect

SEE Geographic subdivisions

Subdivisions: H 1075

SEE ALSO Chronological subdivisions

Discontinued subdivisions

Form subdivisions

Free-floating subdivisions

Geographic subdivisions

Multiple subdivisions

specific pattern headings

Abbreviated forms discontinued: Appendix A (1)

Broader terms: H 370 (4, 7-8)

Controlled by pattern headings: H 1146-H 1200

Formulating dates for specific events: H 1078

Further subdividing by place: H 860

"General see also" references: H 371 (2-8)

"General see" references: H 374 (2)

Interposing place between subject headings and topical subdivisions: H 870

Order of subdivisions: H 1075 (4-6)

Proposals to establish

Multiple subdivisions: H 1090 (3)

Religions: H 1998 (2), H 2015 (2)

Subdivisions having general application: H 205

Subdivisions qualified by nationality, ethnic group, language, etc.: H 320

Subdivisions under pattern headings: H 1146 (2-3)

Subdivisions vs. phrase headings

[. . .] **and** [. . .] headings: H 310

Established phrase headings vs. free-floating subdivisions: H 1095 (2)

Subfield coding

Events established as subdivisions: H 1592 (6)

Geographic subdivisions: H 830 (10)

Names of places used as topical subdivisions: H 830 (10)

Subheadings as "used for" references: H 373 (3)

"Subj Cat Manual/AACR2" notation in name authority records: H 405 (4)

Subject authority records: H 40

Changing existing records: H 193

Adding (*May Subd Geog*): H 194, H 250 (11)

Changing classification numbers: H 196

Changing references: H 195

Deleting subject authority records: H 193 (5-6), H 193.5

Characteristics of records in the file: H 40 (1)

Creating new authority records: H 200

Filling hierarchical "gaps": H 370 (5)

Headings previously unprinted in *Library of Congress Subject Headings*

Biological names: H 1332 (5)

Geographic subdivision information in 781 fields: H 836

Historical background: H 40 (1)

Status of headings: H 40 (1-2)

Tagging headings: H 200 (4)

Subject dictionaries: H 1540 (2-4)

Subject heading assignment: H 180

SEE ALSO specific topics

Editions: H 175

Latest name of jurisdictions: H 708 (1), H 830 (4)

Order of headings: H 80

Subject authority records: H 40 (2)

Subject headings identical to descriptive access points: H 184

Subject heading changes in bibliographic records: H 165

Subject heading construction: H 180 (7-8)

Music headings: H 250 (2-11), H 1438 (2), H 1916.3 (1), H 1917.5

Musical instruments: H 1918

Subject heading proposals: H 200

SEE ALSO "Subject heading proposals" as a subtopic under specific topics

Abbreviations in subject headings: Appendix A, H 373 (2)

Acronyms as subject headings: H 373 (2)

Articles in the initial position in subject headings: H 290

Authority research: H 202

Checklist: H 202 (9)

Subject heading proposals (*Continued*)

- Broader terms and narrower terms: H 200 (6-7), H 370, H 375
- Cataloger comments accompanying proposals: H 200 (10)
- Categories of headings established as name or subject headings: H 405
- Changing existing headings
 - Adding (*May Subd Geog*): H 193 (1), **H 194**
 - Changing classification numbers: H 196
 - Changing references: H 195
 - Deleting subject authority records: H 193 (5-6), H 193.5
- Checklist for new subject heading proposals: H 200 (11)
- Citing sources: H 200 (7-8, 17), **H 203**
 - Subject Cataloging Manual* as a source: H 200 (9)
- Classification numbers: **H 365**
 - Changing numbers associated with existing headings: H 196
 - Musical instruments: H 1918 (4)
 - New subject headings: H 200 (3, 15)
- Diacritics and special characters in subject headings: Appendix C
- "Gaps" in hierarchical reference structure: H 370 (5)
- LC patterns
 - Criteria for citing: H 202 (1-2)
 - Procedure for citing in subject authority records: H 200 (9, 18)
- Related terms: H 200 (6-7, 16), H 370 (10-12)
- Scope notes: H 400
- Subject authority records: H 200
- "Used for" references: H 200 (5-6, 15), H 373
- When to propose new subject headings H 187

Subject heading qualifiers

- SEE ALSO* Geographic qualifiers
 - Language qualifiers for subject headings
- Art qualifiers: H 306 (3), H 1250 (2-6)
- Ethnic qualifiers: H 306 (2), **H 351**
 - Not used with headings in the field of music: H 1917 (4)
- Language qualifiers: H 250 (4-5), H 306 (2)
- Music headings: H 250 (3-5, 10-11), H 306 (3), H 1160 (1), H 1916.3 (3-5), H 1917 (1), H 1917.5, H 1918 (3)
- Nationality qualifiers: H 306 (2), H 320, H 350
 - Not used with headings in the field of music: H 1917 (4)
- Parenthetical qualifiers: H 357
 - Music: H 250 (5, 10-11), H 1916.3 (3-5), H 1916.5 (1), H 1917.5
 - Musical instruments: H 1918 (2, 6-8)
- Religious qualifiers: H 306 (2)
- Time periods: H 306 (3)

Subject headings, Authority records for
 SEE Subject authority records
 Subject headings, Cancelling:
 SEE Cancelling subject headings
 Subject headings, Changing existing
 SEE Changing existing subject headings
 Subject headings in bibliographic records, Changing: H 165
 Subject headings, Specificity of: H 180 (2)
 Subject usage information in name authority records: H 432, H 708, H 835
 Geographic subdivision information: H 835
 Name changes in political jurisdictions: H 708
 Subscript characters: Appendix C (3)
 [. . .] **Suburban Area**: H 362 (2), **H 790** (1, 3), H 1140 (6)
Suburbs and environs as a subdivision
 Discontinued: H 790 (3)
 Superscript characters: Appendix C (3)
 Supplements: H 2145
 Surveys: H 2149
 Synagogues
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)
 Systems of law: H 1718

- T -

Tables as a subdivision: H 2160
 Tagging subject headings
 Moving image genre/form headings: H 1913 (5)
 Radio genre/form headings: H 1969.5 (4)
 Subject authority records: H 200 (4)
 Taiwan: H 925 (2)
 Wade-Giles romanization used for geographic names: H 690 (6)
 Tajikistan: H 1023 (2-4)
Tales: H 1627 (5, 7)
 SEE ALSO Fairy tales
 As a folklore heading: H 1627 (1, 4)
 Juvenile films: H 1690 (3)
 Language qualifiers not used: H 1627 (1)
 Tape recordings, Catalogs of
 SEE **Audiotape catalogs** as a subdivision
 Tape recordings, Video
 SEE Video recordings
Teacher training as a subdivision: H 2217 (2)

Teachers

–**In-service training:** H 2217 (2)

–**Training of:** H 2217

Teaching films, Foreign language: H 2230 (2)

Technical atlases: H 1935 (3)

Telephone calls

Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (4)

Telephone directories as a subdivision: H 1558 (4)

Television programs

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Temples in ruins

Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Temples in use

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Terminal buildings

Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Terminology as a subdivision: H 2184 (2)

–**Dictionaries** not used: H 2184 (1)

Terms and phrases as a subdivision: H 1540 (1), H 2184 (1)

–**Dictionaries** not used: H 2184 (1)

Territorial questions as a subdivision: H 1333.5 (2)

Territorial sovereignties

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (4)

Territories and possessions as a subdivision: H 2185

SEE ALSO Colonies of individual countries

Terrorist attacks

Not covered by pattern heading for wars: H 1200 (1)

Testing as a subdivision: H 2186

Textbooks: H 2187

SEE ALSO Juvenile textbooks

–**Study and teaching** not used: H 2110 (4)

Textbooks, Religious education

SEE Religious education textbooks

Textbooks as a subdivision: H 1690 (1), **H 2187**

Textbooks for English, [French, etc.] speakers as a subdivision: H 2187 (3)

Textbooks for foreign speakers as a subdivision: H 2187 (2)

Texts as a subdivision: H 2190

Music: H 1160 (8), H 1917 (1)

"The" in the initial position in subject headings: H 290, H 690 (6)

Theater buildings

Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Theater companies

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Theater disaster, [date] as a subdivision
 Discontinued: H 1560 (2)

Theme parks
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Themes, motives as a subdivision: H 1627 (2)

Theology as a subdivision
 Usage under **Bible**: H 1295 (2)

Theses: H 1570

Time period qualifiers for subject headings: H 306 (3)

Time periods: H 620

Title added entries, Partial
 SEE Partial title added entries

Titles of publications as subject headings: H 290, H 1435 (2-3)

Tombs
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Topical subdivisions: H 1075 (1)
 Literature about music: H 1160 (4)
 Musical instruments: H 1161

Topical subject headings
 Music: H 1160 (3), H 1916.3 (7-8)
 Tagging in subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Tornadoes
 Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Tournaments
 Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Tours as a subdivision: H 1645 (3)

Towers
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Townships in the United States
 Not used as geographic qualifiers: H 810 (5)

Trails
 Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)
 Subject heading proposals: H 1925 (4)
 Use of vernacular: H 690 (4), H 1925 (2)

Training of as a subdivision: H 2110 (2), **H 2217**

Translating and interpreting: H 2219 (1)

Translating as a subdivision: H 2219 (1)
 Sacred works: H 1300 (1)

Translating into [name of language] as a subdivision: H 2219 (1)

Translating services: H 2219 (2)

Translations: H 2220

Classical and ancient works: H 1412

Folk literature: H 1627 (5)

Sacred works: H 1300

Translations as a subdivision: H 2220

Translations into [name of language] as a subdivision: H 2220

Folk literature: H 1627 (5)

Not used under headings for music of ethnic and national groups: H 1917 (4)

Sacred works: H 1300 (2)

Transliteration

Geographic subject headings: H 690 (6)

Transportation: H 2225

Transportation as a subdivision: H 2225 (2)

Travel posters: H 1945.5 (3)

Treaties: H 2227

Established as name headings: H 2227 (1)

Treaties as a subdivision: H 2227 (1)

Trials: H 2228

Formulating headings: H 2228 (4-5)

Trials, litigation, etc. as a subdivision: H 2228 (2-4)

Tribes (Ethnic groups)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Tribes (Legal entities)

Established as name headings: H 405 (9)

Tribes, Indigenous (U.S.)

As geographic subdivisions: H 830 (7)

Tripitaka: H 1300

Truck stops

Established as name headings: H 405 (10)

Tsunamis

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

Tuberculosis

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1150

Turkmenistan: H 1023 (2-4)

Tunnels: H 1334 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Typhoons

Geographic subdivision to the city level: H 1560 (1)

- U -

U.S.A.

SEE United States

U.S.S.R.: H 1023 (1)

U.S. Newspaper Program: H 1920 (1)

U.S. states: H 713

U.S. Virgin Islands

SEE Virgin Islands of the United States

UF references

SEE "Used for" references

Ukraine: H 1023 (2-4)

Unaccompanied as a qualifier of music form/genre headings: H 1917.5 (31, 34-35, 37-38)

Uncontrolled subject terms in the 653 field: H 160

Undertakers

Established as name headings: H 405 (10)

Uniform titles as subject headings

Commentaries: H 1435 (2-3)

Deleting articles in the initial position: H 290

Established as name headings: H 1435 (3)

–**History** not used: H 1647 (2)

Tagging headings

Subject authority records: H 200 (4)

Union catalogs: H 1361 (2)

Union lists as a subdivision: H 1361 (2)

Union territories as a subdivision: H 713

United Kingdom

SEE Great Britain

United States

Abbreviation as geographic qualifier: H 810 (11)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (5)

Not used under [. . .] **Americans**: H 1919.5 (3)

Not used under certain popular music headings: H 1916.5 (2)

Qualification of geographic headings: H 810 (1)

Abbreviations of states: H 810 (9-11)

United States–History–Civil War, 1861-1865

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1200

United States. Air Force

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159

United States. Armed Forces

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159

United States. Army

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159

United States. Congress

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1155

United States. Marine Corps

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159

United States. Navy

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1159

United States Board on Geographic Names decisions

SEE BGN decisions

United States states: H 713

Universities and colleges

Established as name headings: H 405 (10)

Pattern heading for individual educational institutions: H 1151

Pattern heading for types of educational institutions: H 1151.5

Uprisings

Formulating headings: H 1592

Pattern heading: H 1200

Urban transportation: H 2225

USA

SEE United States

"Use" references

SEE "Used for references"

"Used for" references: H 373

Changing references: H 195 (1)

Contrasted with "general see" references: H 374 (1)

Entering in subject authority records: H 200 (5-6, 15)

Foreign language terms: H 373 (3)

Geographic names: H 690 (7-8)

Headings qualified by nationality, ethnic group, or language: H 320 (2), H 373 (4)

Moving image genre/form headings: H 1913 (4)

Music genre/form headings: H 250 (3-4, 6), H 1917.5 (10)

Musical instruments: H 1918 (3)

Radio genre/form headings: H 1969.5 (2)

Subheadings: H 373 (3)

Variant music subdivisions: H 1160 (1), H 1161 (1)

USNP

SEE U.S. Newspaper program

USSR: H 1023 (1)

Utility districts

Established as name headings: H 405 (10)

Uzbekistan: H 1023 (2-4)

- V -

Valleys

SEE ALSO River valleys

 Established as subject headings: H 690 (1)

 Formulating headings: H 800 (7)

Vatican City: H 1045

 Geographic subdivision: H 830 (7), H 1045

Vedas: H 1300

Vehicles, Land

SEE Land vehicles

Vehicles, Remote-controlled

 Established as subject headings: H 405 (13)

Versions as a subdivision: H 1300 (1-2)

Video recordings: H 2230

Villas

 Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Violin

 Free-floating subdivisions used under: H 1161

Virgin Islands of the United States

 Abbreviation as geographic qualifier: H 810 (11)

 Geographic subdivision: H 807 (8)

Visual art

SEE Art

Visual disabilities, People with

 Visual materials for: H 1913 (2)

Visual materials: H 2230

Vital statistics: H 2095 (2)

Vocal music headings

 Accompaniment: H 1917.5 (36)

 Chorus: H 1917.5 (32-35, 37-38)

 Construction: H 1917.5 (28-37)

 Governed by pattern headings: H 250 (8)

 –**History and criticism:** H 2190 (2)

 Solo voices: H 1917.5 (29-31)

 –**Texts:** H 2190 (2)

Vocational guidance as a subdivision: H 2232

Voivodeships as a subdivision: H 713

Volcanic eruptions

 Formulating headings: H 1592 (5)

- W -

Wales

Geographic subdivision: H 955 (1)

Law cataloging: H 955 (2-3)

Walls: H 1334 (1)

Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

War crime trials: H 2228 (4)

Wars

Biography: H 1330 (4)

~~–Casualties–Statistics:~~ H 2095 (2)

Drama: H 1780 (4)

Fiction: H 1790 (5)

Formulating headings: H 1592

Pattern heading: H 1200

~~–Personal narratives:~~ H 1928 (1)

Poetry: H 1800 (4)

~~–Public opinion:~~ H 1955 (5)

~~–Territorial questions:~~ H 1333.5 (2)

~~–Treaties:~~ H 2227 (1)

Washington (D.C.)

Geographic subdivision: H 830 (7), H 1050

Metropolitan Area: H 362 (2), H 790 (1,3), H 1050

Region: H 790 (4)

Water districts

Established as name headings: H 405 (10)

Watersheds

Formulating headings: H 800 (7-8), H 1145.5 (2)

[. . .] **Region**

Headings not constructed for regions based on watersheds: H 760 (1)

Waterways

Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

Web sites

Established as name headings: H 405 (10)

Weeks, Special: H 1592

Wells

Established as subject headings: H 405 (15)

West Bank: H 980

West Germany

SEE Germany

Wild and scenic rivers

Subject heading proposals: H 800 (6), **H 1925**

Wilderness areas: H 1925 (2)

Wildlife refuges

SEE Parks

Windows as building details: H 1334 (1, 8)

with in music form/genre headings: H 250 (8), H 1916.3 (3), H 1917.5 (21, 26-27)

Wives of famous men

Biography: H 1330 (4)

Women

SEE ALSO Wives of famous men

Biography: H 1330 (3)

Works of art, Individual

Established as name headings: H 405 (10)

World politics: H 1942 (1)

World War, 1939-1945

Free-floating subdivisions under: H 1200

–**Public opinion:** H 1955 (5)

World Wide Web

Citing in subject authority records: H 203 (4)

- X -

"x" references

SEE "Used for" references

"xx" references

SEE Broader terms

Related terms

- Y -

Yearbooks as a subdivision

Discontinued as a general form subdivision: H 2400

Usage under –**Students:** H 2400

Years: H 620

Years, Special: H 1592

Yugoslavia: H 1055

- Z -

Zaibatsu

SEE Asian conglomerate corporations

Zoological gardens

Established as name headings: H 405 (10)